



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

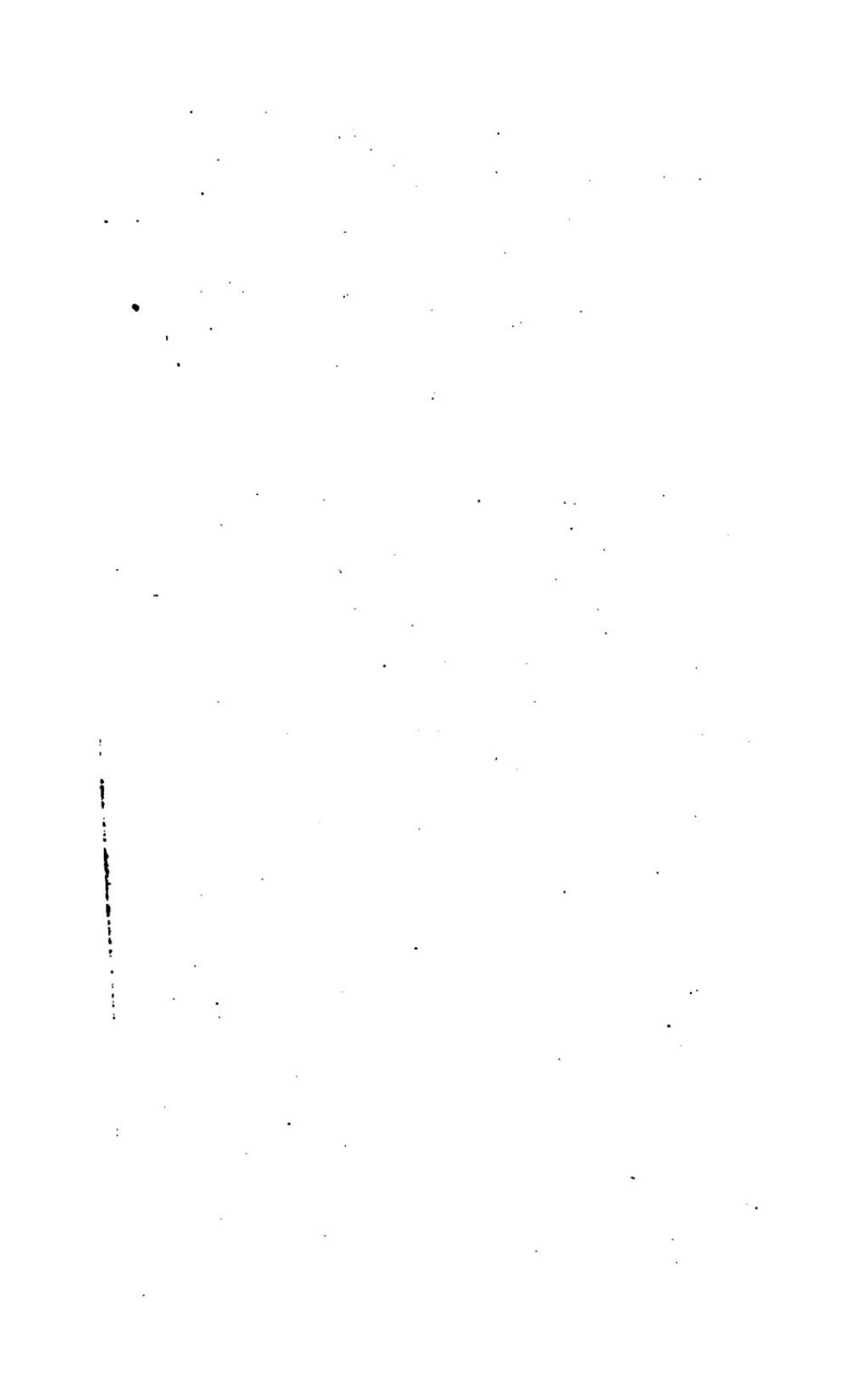




HARVARD  
COLLEGE  
LIBRARY







A GUIDE  
TO THE  
ANGLO-SAXON TONGUE:

A GRAMMAR

AFTER ERASMUS RASK;

TRACTS IN PROSE AND VERSE, WITH NOTES, ETC.

FOR THE USE OF LEARNERS.

With an Appendix.

BY

EDWARD JOHNSTON VERNON, B.A.  
MAGDALENE HALL.

Antiquam exquirite Matrem.

A NEW EDITION.



LONDON:  
JOHN RUSSELL SMITH  
36, SOHO SQUARE.  
MDCCCLXV.

9286.50.3

~~9286.50.3~~



Harvard College Library

FROM

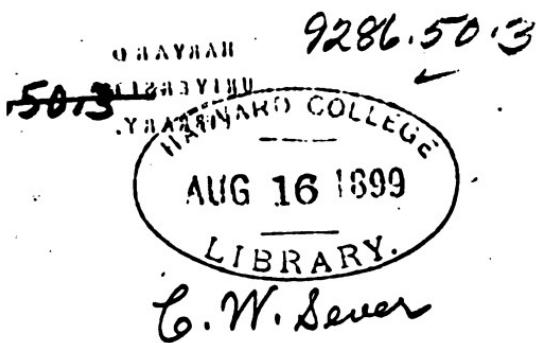
B. W. Sever

02952

✓

5/

0740  
500



TO

**JOHN DAVID MACBRIDE ESQ. D.C.L.**

**Principal of Magdalene Hall,**

**ETC. ETC.**

**IN TOKEN OF**

**RESPECT AND ESTEEM**

## P R E F A C E.

---

ANGLO-SAXON was spoken by our forefathers in England for more than five hundred years; from it have sprung the greater part of our local and family names, very many of our old, and almost all our provincial words and sayings, and fifteen twentieths of what we daily think, and speak, and write. No Englishman therefore altogether ignorant of Anglo-Saxon can have a thorough knowledge of his own mother-tongue, while the language itself, to say nothing of the many valuable and interesting works preserved in it, may in copiousness of words, strength of expression, and grammatical precision, vie with modern German.\*

The present object is to furnish the learner, if it may be, with a cheaper, easier, more comprehensive, and not less trustworthy guide to this tongue than may hitherto have been within his reach.

The first six chapters are mainly abridged from the Grammar of the late Professor Rask of Copenhagen, as edited by Mr. Thorpe, whom the compiler has to thank for leave to make use of his praiseworthy labours, and for obliging answers to queries.

\* See Thorpe's Advertisement to Rask's Grammar

Some alterations and additions seemed called for by the progress of the study since the publication of that work, whence its improved cultivation in this country must be dated. Illustrations from the kindred new Teutonic dialects German and Dutch, with some from Greek and Latin, old and provincial English &c. have taken the place of the Scandinavian\* references as fitter for the English learner. A view, however narrow and imperfect, of languages more or less nearly akin, can hardly fail, it is hoped, to awaken in the understanding student, a wish to know something more of comparative philology, hitherto so unworthily slighted among ourselves, and so laboriously and skilfully worked out by the Germans.

The hyphen is used throughout to divide the parts of compound words from each other, as also prefixes, and when needful, case-endings and other terminations, from roots; in this as in other tongues, the beginner must accustom himself to parse not only every word in a phrase, but every syllable in a word.

Some rules for gender have been attempted, and a list of exceptions to the general rule of its agreement with the German, together with comparative tables of the cardinal numbers, and of the chief tenses, are added.

The accent, sometimes misplaced or left out by Rask, and too often altogether neglected by others, has been carefully attended to.

\* Some acquaintance with Icelandic and the other old northern tongues, above all Gothic, which shows the originals of the A. S. inflections, quantity &c., is of course needful for a perfect knowledge of Anglo-Saxon.

for those faults both of doing, and of leaving undone, which he cannot hope to have avoided, he alone has to answer. Should this imperfect attempt however, by making the speech of the Anglo-Saxons somewhat easier and more attractive than heretofore to their children, give any of these a better knowledge of the real structure, and true spirit, and a greater love for the power and worth of that tongue, which bids fair one day to overspread the whole earth, some time and labour will not have been spent in vain.

---

TO

JOHN DAVID MACBRIDE ESQ. D.C.J.

Principal of Magdalene Hall.

ETC. ETC.

IN TOKEN OF

RESPECT AND ESTEEM

## CONTENTS.

	PAGE.
Preface	v
<b>CHAPTER I.—LETTERS.</b>	
1. Alphabet &c.	1
2. Accent	2
3. Pronunciation	3
4. Spelling	4
5. Change of Letters	5
6. Correspondence of do.	7
<b>CHAPTER II.—NOUNS.</b>	
1. Genders	8
2. Inflection	10
3. Simple Order, or Declension I.	12
4. Complex Order. Declension II. Class 1.	14
5. — — — — 2.	14
6. — — — — 3.	16
7. Complex Order. Declension III. Class 1.	17
8. — — — — 2.	18
9. — — — — 3.	19
<b>CHAPTER III.—ADJECTIVES.</b>	
1. Inflection	20
2. Definite Declension	21
3. Indefinite Declension I.	22
4. — — II.	23
5. Comparison	24
6. Irregular do.	25

X CONTENTS.

CHAPTER IV.—PRONOUNS.

	PAGE.
1. Personal	27
2. Possessive	29
3. Demonstrative	30
4. Interrogative	31
5. Indefinite	32
6. Cardinal Numbers	33
7. Ordinal do.	35

CHAPTER V.—VERBS.

1. Conjugation	37
2. Chief Tenses	38
3. Simple Order, or Conjugation I.	39
4. Conjugation I. Class 1.	41
5. — — — 2.	42
6. — — — 3.	45
7. Complex Order	46
8. Conjugation II. Class 1.	48
9. — — — 2.	50
10. — — — 3.	53
11. Conjugation III.	54
12. Conjugation III. Class 1.	55
13. — — — 2.	58
14. — — — 3.	59
15. Anomalous Verbs	60
16. Auxiliaries &c.	62

CHAPTER VI.—FORMATION OF WORDS.

1. Prefixes	63
2. Nominal Terminations	65
3. Adjectival do.	67
4. Verbal do.	68
5. Particles	69
6. Composition	71

## CONTENTS.

xi

## CHAPTER VII.—SYNTAX.

	PAGE.
1. Syntax . . . . .	73
2. Syntax of Nouns . . . . .	74
3. — — Adjectives . . . . .	76
4. — — Verbs . . . . .	78
5. — — Prepositions . . . . .	87
6. — — Conjunctions . . . . .	92
7. — — Interjections . . . . .	96

## CHAPTER VIII.—PROSE EXTRACTS.

1. S. Matthew, XII. 1—13.	98
2. S. Mark, VI. 32.	100
3. S. Luke, XX. 9—25.	104
4. S. John, VII. 14—28.	107
5. Genesis, XLV.	109
6. Exodus, XXIII.	113
7. Saxon Chronicle	117
8. Apollonius	121
9. Boëthius, XVII., XXXIV. 10.	129

## CHAPTER IX.—VERSE EXTRACTS.

1. Narrative Verse . . . . .	135
2. Boëthius, Metre XII.	141
3. Cædmon, parts of Cant. II. and XVI.	145
4. Beowulf, parts of Cant. V., XXII., XXVII.	153

## APPENDIX.

1. Words spelt alike, but differing in accent, pronunciation, and meaning . . . . .	1
2. Words spelt and accented alike, but differing in meaning . . . . .	167
3. Other words likely to be confounded by learners . . . . .	174
4. Additional Notes . . . . .	180

## **ABBREVIATIONS &c.**

---

**A. S. Anglo-Saxons.**

**Comp. compara.**

**D. Dutch.**

**F. French.**

**G. German.**

**Goth. Gothia.**

**Gr. Greek.**

**L. Latin.**

**lit. literally.**

**O. old English in general**

**P. provincial.**

**S. Scottish, the ancient English dialect of the Lowlands of Scotland, and part of the north of England.**

**Numbers, applied to a noun, denote the declension and class; to a verb, the conjugation and class; to an adjective, the indefinite declension.**

HARVARD  
UNIVERSITY  
LIBRARY

## GUIDE

TO THE

## ANGLO-SAXON TONGUE.

---

### CHAPTER I.

#### SECT. I.—*The Alphabet, &c.*

The A. S. letters are 24, viz.

A a [A]	N n
Æ æ [E]	O o
B b	P p
C c [C]	R r [r]
D d [d]	S s [s]
E e [e]	T t [t̪]
F f [F]	U u
G g [L ȝ]	W w [V Vp]
H h [H Ð]	X x
I i	Y y
L l	p p
M m [M]	D d

The characters between brackets were written by the Anglo-Saxons, but being for the most part mere corruptions of the Roman forms are now seldom printed.

In later times k was used for c; v and z occur in foreign names only. The abbreviations *j* for *and*, *p* for *but*, *the*, *that*, and others were in use; in general — shows that m or n is left out.

---

## II.—Accent.

The accent (') over a vowel shows it to be long. The A. S. accented vowels are mostly long by nature; as, lár *lore* (G. lehre), bær *bier* (G. bahre), grén *green* (G. grün), wíd *wide* (G. weit), gód *good* (G. gut), rúm *room, space* (G. raum), fýr *fire* (G. feuer). Some have become long by contraction, g, h, ng, or n, being left out; as, smeagan, smeán *to consider*, sleahan, sleán *to slay*, gangan, gán *to go*, fangan, fón *wake*: in fíf *five*, tóð *tooth*, múð *mouth*, and the like, the kindred tongues show the omitted n; as, πεντε, L. quinque, G. fünf; δ-δους, δ-δοντ-ος, L. dens, (') G. zahn; G. mund: a few from the omission of a vowel; as, tae, tá *toe*. From the examples above and below, it will be seen that in English a long or double vowel, and in German a long or double vowel, or diphthong, commonly answers to an A. S. long or accented vowel, while short vowels in general correspond in like manner. The accent serves at the same time, though never used for that purpose merely, to distinguish many words of like spelling but different meaning and sound; as, ac *but*, ác *oak*; mæst *mast*, mæst *most*; wende *turned, went*, wénde *weened*; is *is*, ís *ice*; for *for*, fór *journey*; ful *full*,

(') In A. S. as in Greek, ns does not occur in the same syllable.

*foul*; *hyrde herd, keeper, hýrde heard.*(<sup>2</sup>) With-due attention therefore to the accent, A. S. cannot rightly written, pronounced, nor understood.(<sup>3</sup>)

---

### III.—Pronunciation.

The pronunciation is as follows:—

a has the sound of our *a* in *ah*; F. &c. short *a*.

á is longer and broader, like G. &c. long *a*, approaching our *au* and *aw*.

au and aw sound nearly like *ow* in *now*, but more open, like G. and Italian *au*.

æ is pronounced like *a* in *glad*.

é nearly as *a* in *dare*; G. *eh*; F. close *é*.

e sounds like *e* in *send, rather*, when thus placed; before a consonant followed by a vowel it resembles the *in bear*, but is shorter, like F. open *è*. Before a or o it ends as *y*; at the end of a syllable it is very lightly sounded, like the F. unaccented *e*, or the G. *e* final.

é is pronounced like æ.

i and y answer to *i* in *dim*.

i before another vowel to *y*.

í an *dý* to *ee* in *deem*.

o to short *o* in *not*; F. open *o*.

ó to long *o* in *note*; F. close *ö*.

ow is sounded as *ow* in *now*.

(<sup>2</sup>) Comp. G. *mast, meist; wandte, währte; ist, eis; für, fuhr; voll, faul; hirt, hörte*.

(<sup>3</sup>) The more advanced student will find comparison with the Gothic and other ancient dialects the only sure guide to the A. S. quantity.

u as *u* in *full*.

ú as *oo* in *fool*.

The consonants are pronounced as in English, with the following exceptions :—

c is always hard like *k*; cw stands for *gw*, which was however used in later times.

f between two vowels, or at the end of a syllable, sounds like *v*.

g is never soft; when placed however between two of the vowels æ, e, i, or y, or at the beginning of a syllable before e or i, followed by another vowel, it has the sound of *y*.<sup>(1)</sup>

cg is usually written for *gg*.

h is always strongly aspirated; at the end of a syllable or before a hard consonant it is guttural, like the G. *ch*, the S. *ch* in *loch*, and the Irish *gh* in *lough*.

hw answers to our *wh*; h occurs also before l, n and r.

w sometimes, as in E., stands before r; likewise before l.

p (*tha*) is our hard *th*, as in *thing*.

d (*eth*) our soft *th*, as in *other*.

p usually begins, d ends a syllable, but they were and are often confounded.

#### IV.—Spelling.

The A. S. spelling was very variable; the following are the commonest changes :—

<sup>1</sup> It is likely that g before e or i, and (like h) at the end of a syllable, was guttural, as it often is in German, and always in Dutch.

á — æ and á — á; þám, þém; þére, þáre.  
 a — ea; waldan, wealdan *to wield, rule.*  
 a — o and o — a; man, mon<sup>(3)</sup> *man*; on, an *on.*  
 ea — e and e — a; ceaster, cester<sup>(3)</sup> *town*; fela,  
 feala *many*; eá — é; teáh, téh *drew.*  
 i — y, eo; hit, hyt *it*: him, heom *them.*  
 í — ý, íe, eó; hí, hý, híe, heó *they.*  
 eo — u, y, e; swoerd, swurd *sword*; seolf, sylf,  
 self *self.*

eó — ú, ý; sweótol, swútol, swýtol *manifest.*

g — h; sorg, sorh *care, sorrow.*

ng, nc, nge; sang, sanc, sangc *song*: n and g  
 are often transposed, &c.; þegen, þegn, þeng, þen  
*servant, thane*: g is sometimes added or cast off at the  
 end of a word; as, hwý, hwýg *why?* hefig, hefi  
*heavy*: it is often left out before d or ð; mægden,  
 mæd *maiden, mægð, mæð tribe.*

cs, sc, hs, x; ácsian, áscian, áhsian, áxian *to  
 ask (ax).*<sup>(4)</sup>

#### V.—Change of Letters.

Other changes of letters take place in inflection and  
 derivation; the German synonyms often undergo the  
 like, the English sometimes.

a is changed into æ, and vice versa; grafan *to grave*,  
 (G. graben); þú græfst thou *gravest*, (G. du gräbst);

(3) P. *mon* for *man*, *lang* for *long*, and the like.

(4) L. *castra*; hence *Chester, -chester, &c.* in local names.

(5) See also nouns II. 2., and irregular comparison.

bæd *bath*, (G. bad); baðu *baths* (G. bäder.)<sup>(1)</sup>

a into e; man, *man* (G. mann); men<sup>(2)</sup> *men* (G. männer).

á into á; hál *hale, whole*, ge-hálan *to heal*.

ea into e or y; neah *nigh*, nehst nyhst *nighest, next*.

e, o, eo, u into i or y; ren *rain*, rinan *to rain*; storm *storm* (G. sturm); styrman *to storm* (G. stürmen); weorc *work* (G. werk), wyrcan *to work* (G. wirken); hunger *hunger*, hyngrian *to hunger*.

éá, éó, ú, into ý; leás *loose*, (G. los); a-lýsan *to re-release* (G. er-lösen); neód *need* (G. noth); nýdan *to force* (G. nöthigen); scrúd *shroud*, scrýdan *to shroud*.

ó into é; dóm *doom*, déman *to deem, doom*.

bb into f; a-hebban *to exalt*, a-hafen *exalted*<sup>(3)</sup>.

c and cc into h; sécan *to seek*, ic sóhte *I sought*; feccan *to fetch*, (ge-)freht *fretcht*<sup>(4)</sup>.

g into h and vice versa; wrígan *to cover*, ic wráh *I covered*; beorh *mountain*, plur. beorgas<sup>(5)</sup>.

s into r<sup>(7)</sup>; freósan *to freeze*, (ge-)froren *frozen*.

ð into d<sup>(8)</sup>; sníðan *to cut* (G. schneiden), sniden *cut* (G. ge-schnitten).

Several other changes take place in the formation of imperfects I. 3. and complex; likewise in nouns II. 2., III. 1. 3. and in adjectives.

(1) See Verbs II. 3., and Nouns III. 1.

(2) See Nouns III. 2.

(3) See irregular comparison.

(4) See Verbs II. 3.

(5) See Verbs I. 2, 3.

(6) See Verbs III. 1, 2. Nouns II. 2.

(7) See Verbs III. 3.

(8) See Verbs II. 1, and III. 2.

VI.—*Correspondence of Letters.*

Attention to the correspondence of A. S. with English and German letters helps not only to recognise words already known in a kindred tongue, but to settle their derivation, spelling, and quantity. Thus—

á answers to E. long o; G. ei, i. e; báñ<sup>(9)</sup> *bone*, G. bein; mágre<sup>(10)</sup> *more, greater*, G. mehr.

é to E. l. e; G. l. o, a, au: streám *stream*, G. m.; sceáp *sheep*, G. schaf; ge-leáfa *be-lief*, G. gibe.

ea to E. short a, l. o; G. s. a: scearp *sharp*, G. scharf; cealд *cold*, G. kalt.

æ to E. and G. a, e: gæst *guest*, G. gast; fæst *fast*, G. fest.

å to E. l. e, a, o; G. l. a, ei: sád *seed*, G. saat; hær *hair*, G. haar; mæst<sup>(11)</sup> *most*, G. meist.

é to E. l. e; G. l. ü, ä: céne *bold, keen*, G. kühn; wénan *to ween, imagine*, G. wähnen.

í to E. l. i; G. ei: síde *side*, G. seite.

eo to E. a, o, u, e; G. e, ie: deorc *dark*, swoord *sword*, G. schwert; ceorl *churl*, G. kerl; feoll *fell*, G. fiel.

ó to E. oo; G. l. u: flór *floor*, G. flur.

éó, eów to E. l. e; G. l. ie, eu: deóp *deep*, G. tief; deor *dear*, G. theuer; cneów *knee*, G. knie.

ú to E. ou, ow, oo; G. l. au, u: mús *mouse*, G. maus; cú *cow*, G. kuh; rúm *room, space*, G. raum.

(9) S. bane.

(10) S. mair.

(11) S. meiste.

ý to E. l. i, e; G. l. eu, au, ö: fýr *fire*, G. feuer; bryd *bride*, G. braut; hýran *to hear*, G. hören.

c (before a soft vowel) to E. and G. cn, k: cyle *chill*, G. kühle; stician *to stick*, G. stechen.

cc to E. tch, ck; G. ck: streccan *to stretch*, G. strecken; liccian *to lick*, G. lecken.

sc to E. sh, sk; G. sch: scyld *shield*, G. schild; disc *dish, table*, G. tisch; tusc *tusk*.

g (before a soft vowel sometimes) to E. y, G. j: gear *year*, G. jahr; girstan-dæg *yester-day*.

r and s are often transposed: forst *frost*, G. frost; bridd (*young*) *bird*; flacse *flash*, G. flasche.

## CHAPTER II.

### I.—Nouns. Gender.

The genders, as in Greek, Latin, German, &c. are three, viz. neuter, masculine, feminine; the first two, as in those tongues, closely resembling each other, the last differing widely from both. A. S. nouns in general agree in gender with the corresponding German; as,

Neuter: { wif G. weib *woman, wife*.  
          { cild G. kind *child*.

Masculine: mona G. mond *moon*.

Feminine: sunne G. sonne *sun*.

The chief exceptions are:—

Neut. eár	G. ähre	(f.) <i>ear of corn</i> .
-----------	---------	---------------------------

— fæsten	G. feste	(f.) <i>fastness</i> .
----------	----------	------------------------

— fyðer	G. feder	(f.) <i>feather, wing</i>
---------	----------	---------------------------

ód	G.	muth	(m.)	<i>mind, mood.</i>
—	twig	G.	zweig	(m.) <i>twig.</i>
—	wæpen	G.	waffe	(f.) <i>weapon.</i>
—	wéstén	G.	wüste	(f.) <i>waste, desert.</i>
—	wín <sup>(1)</sup>	G.	wein	(m.) <i>wine.</i>
sc.	cræft	G.	kraft	(f.) <i>power, craft, art.</i>
—	ende	G.	ende	(n.) <i>end.</i>
—	feld	G.	feld	(n.) <i>field.</i>
—	here	G.	heer	(n.) <i>army.</i>
—	lust	G.	lust	(f.) <i>lust, pleasure.</i>
—	mere <sup>(2)</sup>	G.	meer	(n.) <i>mere, lake, sea.</i>
Fem.	bóc	G.	buch	(n.) <i>book.</i>
—	hælu <sup>(3)</sup>	G.	heil	(m.) <i>health, salvation.</i>
—	heorte <sup>(4)</sup>	G.	herz	(n.) <i>heart.</i>
—	ge-sýhd	G.	ge-sicht	(n.) <i>sight.</i>
—	turf	G.	torf	(n.) <i>turf.</i>
—	wiht	G.	wicht	(m.) <i>wight, being.</i>

reover, all A. S. nouns ending in -dóm, -hád, and -pe are masculine, while G. nouns in -thum are some neuter, some masculine, in -heit and -schaft feminine; A. S. in -nes (-nys, -nis) feminine, G. in -niss some neuter, some feminine.

Some words are of more than one gender; thus flód<sup>(5)</sup> *flood* is neut. (II. 1.) and masc. (II. 2.); sée *sea* (II. 2.) and fem. (I. 3.); bend *band, bond* masc. (II. 2.) and fem. (II. 3.); lác *gift, office, &c.* all three (II. 1. 2. 3.), but oftenest neuter.

(<sup>1</sup>) Oív-og masc. L. vin-um, neut. (<sup>2</sup>) L. mare, neut.

(<sup>3</sup>) L. sal-us, fem. (<sup>4</sup>) Kapð-ia fem. L. cor, neut.

(<sup>5</sup>) G. fluth fem.; see masc. and fem.; band neut. and masc.

## FURTHER RULES FOR GENDER.

I. Nouns ending in -tl, -ed, -incle, and diminutives in -en; likewise all having the nominative and accusative alike in both numbers are neuter.

II. Nouns in -a, -m, -ls, -ad, -od, -e (from verbs) and -ling; likewise all forming the genitive singular in -a, or the nominative plural in -as are masculine.

III. Nouns in -æd, -ud, -d (after a consonant) -eo, -u (of quality from adjectives) -e (from adjectives) -ung, and -leóst are feminine.

IV. The gender of compound words depends on that of the last part; thus *wif-man woman* is masculine.<sup>(1)</sup>

II.—*Declension.*

Nouns are divided into two Orders, the Simple and the Complex;<sup>(2)</sup> the former having one Declension of three Classes for the three Genders, the latter two Declensions of three Classes each<sup>(3)</sup>.

The Simple Order, answering to the Greek and Latin pure nouns, contains those ending in an essential vowel; viz. -e in the neuter, -a in the masculine, and -e in the feminine. The Complex Order, answering to the Gr. and L. impure nouns, comprises all ending in a consonant, together with some in an unessential -e or -u.

(1) By the same rule G. *frauen-zimmer female* is neut.; manns-person *man* fem.

(2) In Grimm's system Simple Nouns are called weak; Complex, strong.

(3) For the grounds of this division, see Rask's Grammar, pp. 26—30.

*Table of the Inflection of Nouns.*

## SIMPLE ORDER.

## DECLENSION I.

	I. Neut.	II. Masc.	III. Fem.
	SINGULAR.		
Nom.	-e	-a	-o
Accus. <sup>(4)</sup>	-e	-an	-an
Abl. & Dat.	-an	-an	-an
Gen.	-an	-an	-an

	PLURAL.		
	Nom. & Acc.	Abl. & Dat.	Gen.
	-an	-um	-ena

## COMPLEX ORDER.

## DECLENSION II.

## DECLENSION III.

	I.Neut.	II.Masc.	III.Fem.		I.Neut.	II.Masc.	III.Fem.
	SINGULAR.				SINGULAR.		
Nom.	—	— (-e)	—		—(-e)	-u	-u
Accus.	—	— (-e)	-e		—(-e)	-u	-e
A. & D.	-e	-e	-e		-e	-a	-e
Gen.	-es	-es	-e		-es	-a	-e

	PLURAL.				PLURAL.		
	N. & A.	A. & D.	Gen.		N. & A.	A. & D.	Gen.
	-as	-um	-a		-u	-um	-a
					-a	-um	-a
					-a	-a	-a(-ena)

(4) On this arrangement see Rask, Preface p. 54.

## RULES FOR DECLENSION.

I. All Nouns have the nominative and accusative alike in the plural.

II. All Nouns form the ablative and dative plural in -um, often changed to -on, and sometimes again to -an.

III. The ablative and dative are always alike in each number.

IV. Neuters, as in Greek, Latin, and German, have the nominative and accusative alike in each number.

V. Feminines vary the nominative and accusative singular; but form the ablative, dative, and genitive singular alike.

VI. The Simple Order forms its genitive plural in -ena, the Complex in -a. (¹)

---

III.—*Simple Order, or Declension I.*

The First Declension contains a few neuters ending in -e, all masculines in -a, and all feminines in -e; the nominative plural is formed in -an (²). The three Classes are so much alike that they may be shown at one view.

(¹) Participial nouns form it in -ra (see II. 2.) like indefinite adjectives. Complex feminines (II. 3. and III. 3.) sometimes have a Simple gen. plural.

(²) G. nouns forming their plur. in -en (-a) are Simple, all others Complex.

Examples—*eágē eye, steorra star, tungē tongue.*

	CLASS I.	CLASS II.	CLASS III.
	SINGULAR.		
	Neuter.	Masculine.	Feminine.
Nom.	eág-e	steorr-a	tung-e
Accus.	eág-e	steorr-an	tung-an
Abl. & Dat.	eág-an	steorr-an	tung-an
Gen.	eág-an	steorr-an	tung-an
	PLURAL.		
N. & Acc.	eág-an	steorr-an	tung-an
Abl. & Dat.	eág-um	steorr-um	tung-um
Gen.	eág-ena	steorr-ena	tung-ena.

In like manner are declined *eáre ear, clíwe clew; hearra lord, guma man, wyrhta wright, workman, tíma time, draca dragon, hlísa fame; hlæfdige lady, cirice (circe) church, wuce week, eorðe earth, wíse wise, way<sup>(2)</sup> &c.* Also some contracted nouns; as, *freá lord* (masc.) *tá toe, beó<sup>(3)</sup> bee* (fem.), making *freán* &c. plural *tán, táum, taena; beón, beóna* &c. *Æ' law, sá sea<sup>(4)</sup>*, and *eá river* (likewise fem.) are indeclinable, except sometimes gen. *eás<sup>(5)</sup>*, nom. plural *eán*.

(<sup>2</sup>) *Manna man* and *beofone heaven* are much less common than *man* III. 2. and *heofon* II. 2.

(<sup>3</sup>) G. *zehe*, *biene*, not contracted.

(<sup>4</sup>) *Sá* is also declinable, as II. 2.

(<sup>5</sup>) All A. S. nouns originally formed the genitive in -e; see p. 70, n. 4.

IV.—*Complex Order. Declension II.*

## CLASS I.

The Second Declension, first Class, contains many neuters ending in one or more consonants.

Examples—leáf *leaf*, word *word*.

## SINGULAR.

Nom. & Acc.	leáf	word
Abl. & Dat.	leáf-e	word-e
Gen.	leáf-es	word-es

## PLURAL.

Nom. & Acc.	leáf	word
Abl. & Dat.	leáf-um	word-um
Gen.	leáf-a	word-a.

Thus are declined eár *ear of corn*, hús *house*, deór (<sup>1</sup>) *beast*, ge-hát *promise*, hors *horse*, spel *story*, spell, wíf *woman*, wife, bearn *child*, bairn, lamb *lamb* &c.; feoh (<sup>2</sup>) *fee, money, cattle makes feo, feos.*

## V.—CLASS II.

The Second Declension, second Class, comprises all regular masculines ending in a consonant, all complex ones in -e, and a few in -u (-o); the plural is formed in -as; some monosyllables change æ to a in the plural.

(<sup>1</sup>) Hence deer—"Rats and mice, and such small deer."

(<sup>2</sup>) Comp. L. pec-us, pec-unia; our *feo* is *money only*, G. *vieh* *cattle only*.

Examples—del *part, deal*, ende *end*, dæg *day*.

## SINGULAR.

N. & A. del	end-e	dæg
A. & D. del-e	end-e	dæg
Gen. del-es	end-es	dæg-es

## PLURAL.

N. & A. del-as	end-as	dag-as
A. & D. del-um	end-um	dag-um
Gen. del-a	end-a	dag-a.

Thus also cyning (*cinc*) *king*, smid *smith*, stn *stone*, weg *way*, freo-dm *freedom*, munuc-hd *monkhood*; mete *meat*, rdere *reader*, weordscipe *worship*; staf<sup>(\*)</sup> *staff, letter*, mæg *kinsman*, &c. Participial nouns in -end usually have the nominative and accusative sing. and plur. alike, and make -ra in the gen. plural. Frnd *friend*, and fend *foe, fiend* have plur. frnd, fnd, frend, fend, or frendas &c. Disyllables in -el (-ol), -en (-on), and -er (-or) are contracted in the oblique cases and plural; thus engel *angel*, dryhten *lord*, ealdor *prince*, make engle, engles, englas &c. dryhtne &c. Heofen (-on) *heaven* has abl. and dat. heofene, heofone, or heofne and so on. Mona (mond) *month* forms monde &c. Winter *winter* has abl. and dat. wintra, nom. pl. wintras, or winter. Feld *field*, ford *ford*, and sumer (-or) *summer* make abl. and dat. felda, forda, sumera.

(\*) Comp. G. stab, stbe; &c. G. buch-stab is *letter*.

Fæder *father* is seldom varied in the singular, and never contracted. Nouns in -h, and -u (-o), change them to g and w; as, beáh *ring*, beáge, beágés &c.; bealu *bale*, *injury*, bealwe, and the like: a few drop the -h; as, feorh *life*, feore &c. Those in -sc often take x (cs) in the plural; as, fisc *fish*, fixas &c.; sometimes throughout; fix, fixe &c.

---

### VI.—CLASS III.

The Second Declension, third Class, contains all regular feminines ending in a consonant; the plural is formed in -a.

Examples—stefen (stefn) *voice*, sprác *speech*.

#### SINGULAR.

Nom.	stefen	sprác
Acc.	stefn-e	sprác-e
A. & D.	stefn-e	sprác-e
Gen.	stefn-e	sprác-e

#### PLURAL.

N. & A.	stefn-a	sprác-a
A. & D.	stefn-um	sprác-um
Gen.	stefn-a(-ena)	sprác-a(-ena).

Thus are declined sáwel *soul*, wylen *female slave*, frófer *comfort*, ge-samnung *assembly*, écnys *eternity*, lág *law*, stów *place*, þeód *people*, lár *lore*, myrd *mirth*, bén *prayer*, &c. Disyllables in -el (-ol), -en, -er (-or), are contracted in the oblique cases, and often in all; as, sáwl, wyln, frófr. A single final consonant after a

short vowel is doubled; as *syn sin*, accus. &c. *synne*. The gen. plur. is sometimes in -ena. Nouns in -ung sometimes form the abl. and dat. in -a. *Hand hand*, makes accus. *hand*, abl. and dat. *handa*. *Miht might*, *tid time*, *tide*, *woruld world*, have the accus. like the nom.; *woruld* sometimes makes gen. *worldes*.<sup>(1)</sup> *N iht night*, and *wiht wight* remain unchanged in the accus. singular, and nom. plural.

---

### VII.—Declension III.

#### CLASS I.

The Third Declension, first Class, contains all complex neuters in -e, all in -u, all neuter dissyllables in er (-or), -el (-ol), and -en, some in ed (-od), and many monosyllables in a consonant. The plural is in -u (-o), often changed to -a; some monosyllables change æ, and a few ea, into a in the plural.

Examples—*treów tree*, *ríce realm*, *fæt vat*, *vessel*.

#### SINGULAR.

N. & A. <i>treów</i>	<i>ríc-e</i>	<i>fæt</i>
A. & D. <i>treów-e</i>	<i>ríc-e</i>	<i>fæt-e</i>
Gen. <i>treów-es</i>	<i>ríc-es</i>	<i>fæt-es</i>

#### PLURAL.

N. & A. <i>treów-u</i>	<i>ríc-u</i>	<i>fat-u</i>
A. & D. <i>treów-um</i>	<i>ríc-um</i>	<i>fat-um</i>
Gen. <i>treów-a</i>	<i>ríc-a</i>	<i>fat-a.</i>

(1) See page 13, n. 5 above.

So likewise *scip ship*, *lim limb*, *deófol*<sup>(1)</sup> *devil*, *wæter water*, *ge-writ writing*, *writ*; *wíte punishment*, *g e-mére boundary*, *spere spear*, *melu meal*, *flour*; *b æd bath*, *glæs*<sup>(2)</sup> *glass*, *geat gate*, &c.

Dissyllables are mostly contracted; thus, *heáfod head*, *tácen token*, *wunder wonder*, *make heáfde*, *heáfdes* &c. *tácne*, *wundre* &c.; *nýten beast*, *neat*, *weeofod altar*, &c. are usually not. Those in -en sometimes double the n in the oblique cases; as, *wéstén* *desert*, *wéstenne* &c. *Cild child*, *cealf calf*, and *æg egg*, form their plural *cildru (-a)*<sup>(3)</sup>, *cealfru*, *ægru*; the first however often has *cild* or *cilde*. *þýstru darkness*, *lendenu loins*, &c. have no singular. Nouns in -u take w, and are usually contracted, forming the plural in -a; as, *searw array*, *ambush*, *searwe*, *searwes*; plur. *searwa* &c.

### VIII.—CLASS II.

The Third Declension, second Class, comprises masculines in -u (-o), forming their plural in -a, some irregulars (masc. and fem.) in -er (-or), changing their vowel in the ablative and dative, and making -u (-o, -a) in the plural, a few (masc.) changing their vowel as above, and in the nominative and accusative plural, &c.

(<sup>1</sup>) *De ófol* is often masculine.

(<sup>2</sup>) Comp. G. *fass*, *fässer*; *glas*, *gläser*.

(<sup>3</sup>) Hence *child-en*, P. *child-er*; comp. G. *kind*, *kind-er*; *kalb*, *kälb-er*; *ei*, *eij-er*: D. *kind*, *kind-er-en*; *kalb*, *kalv-er-en*; *ei*, *eij-er-en*.

Examples—*sunu son, bróðer brother, man man.*

## SINGULAR.

N. & A. sun-u	bróðer	man
A. & D. sun-a	bréðer	men
Gen. sun-a	bróðer	mann-e

## PLURAL.

N. & A. sun-a	bróðr-u	men
A. & D. sun-um	bróðr-um	mann-um
Gen. sun-a	bróðr-u	mann-a.

So too are declined *wudu wood, sidu custom, medo mead, metheglín; móder mother, dóhter daughter, sweoster sister: fót foot, and tóð tooth, follow man, making fét, téð.* (§) Sun-ena is rare.

Leóde (G. leute) *people, Dene Danes, Engle Angles, Englishmen,* and a few more in -e with no singular, make leódum, leóda, &c.

## IX.—CLASS III.

The Third Declension, third Class, contains all feminines ending in -u or -o, also some irregulars which change their vowel, &c. The former sometimes make the genitive plural in -ena.

Examples—*denu vale, bóc book, burh burg, town.*

## SINGULAR.

Nom. den-u	{	bóc	burh
Acc. den-e			
A. & D. den-e		béc	byrig
Gen. den-e		béc	burg-e

(§) Comp. G. *mann, männer; fuss, füsse; zahn, zähne.*

## PLURAL.

N. & A. den-a	béc	byrig
A. & D. den-um	bóc-um	burg-um
Gen. den-a (-ena)	bóc-a	burg-a.

Like *denu* are declined *lufu love*, *gifu gift*, *grace*, *snóru daughter-in-law*, *caru care*, *lagu water*, &c. *Mænigeo* (-u) *many*, *multitude*, *yldo age*, *eld*, *brædo breadth*, and some others in -o are indeclinable, except abl. and dat. plur. *mænigum*. *Duru door* makes abl. and dat. sing. *dura*. Collectives in -waru, as *burh-waru town's-folk*, form plur. -ware, gen. -wara or -warena. *Mús mouse*, *lús louse*, *cú cow*, *gós goose*, *bróc breeches*, follow *bóc*, making plur. *mýs mice*, *lys lice*, *cý hye*, *gés<sup>(1)</sup> geese*, *bréc*. *Cú* sometimes has gen. sing. *cús*,<sup>(2)</sup> gen. plur. *cúna*. *Turf turf*, and *furh furrow*, follow *burh*, making *tyrf*, &c.

## CHAPTER III.

I.—*Adjectives*

As in German &c. have a Definite and an Indefinite inflection: the former is used when the adjective is preceded by the definite article, by any other demonstrative, or by a possessive pronoun; the latter always else. There are three Declensions, one for the Definite form, agreeing closely with the Simple Order, two for the In-

(<sup>1</sup>) Comp. G. *buch*, *bücher*; *maus*, *mäuse*; *laus*, *läuse*; *kub*, *kühe*; *gane*, *gänse*.

(<sup>2</sup>) See page 70, n. 4.

definite, answering, though not so exactly, to the Complex Order of Nouns.

---

## II.—Definite Declension.

Example—(*góð good*) þæt góð-e<sup>(3)</sup> &c. *the good.*

SINGULAR.		
Neut.	Masc.	Fem.
Nom. þæt góð-e	se góð-a	seó góð-e
Acc. þæt góð-e	þone góð-an	þá góð-an
Abl. þý góð-an	þý góð-an	
Dat. þám góð-an	þæré góð-an	
Gen. þæs góð-an	þæré góð-an	

PLURAL.		
N. & A.	A. & D.	Gen.
þa góð-an	þám góð-um	
		þára góð-ena.

This declension is used for all adjectives, participles, and pronouns in general; participles present however take -ra instead of -ena in the genitive plural. Monosyllables commonly change e to a throughout; as, smæl small, þæt smale, se smala, seú smale *the small*, and so on. Adjectives in -h, as heáh high, usually change it to g when the case-ending is a vowel, as, þæt heág-e, &c.; otherwise the h is dropped; as, abl. &c. heán. Those in -u (-o), as near-u narrow, take w throughout; as, þæt near-we, &c.<sup>(4)</sup>

<sup>(3)</sup> Comp. Nouns I. 1, 2, 3.

<sup>(4)</sup> Comp. Nouns II. 2, 3. III. 1.

III.—*Indefinite Declension I.*Example—gód(¹) *good.*

SINGULAR.		
Neut.	Masc.	Fem.
Nom. gód	gód	gód
Acc. gód	gód-ne	gód-e
Abl. gód-e		gód-e
Dat. gód-um		gód-re
Gen. gód-es		gód-re

PLURAL.		
Neut.	Masc. & Fem.	
N. & A. gód(-u)	gód-e	
A. & D. gód-um		
Gen. gód-ra.		

Thus are declined adjectives ending in -e, -el (-ol), -isc, and -wís; likewise most monosyllables, all participles present, participles past of the Simple Order, superlatives and pronouns; as, *wyrð-e* *worth, worthy*, *dýg-el* *dark*, *sprec-ol* *talkative*, *menn-isc* *human*, *ge-wís* *sure*, *sóð* *true, sooth*, *leóht* *light*, *heard hard*, *seóc* *sick*, *wrec* *wretched*, *fæst* *fast*, &c.

Those in -e drop it when a syllable of inflection is added; *wyrð-ne*, *wyrð-um*, *wyrð-re*, &c.

Adjectives in -h and -u follow the rules given above; accus. masc. *heá-nne*, *nearo-ne*; abl. &c. fem. *heá-re*, *near-we* or *near-e*; gen. plur. *heá-ra*, *near-wa* or *near-a*.

(¹) Comp. Nouns II. 1, 2.

IV.—*Indefinite Declension II.*Example—smæl(<sup>s</sup>) *small*

SINGULAR.		
Neut.	Masc.	Fem.
Nom. smæl	smæl	smal-u
Acc. smæl	smæl-ne	smal-e
Abl. smal-e		smale
Dat. smal-um		smæl-re
Gen. smal-es		smæl-re

PLURAL.		
Neut.	Masc. & Fem.	
N. & A. smal-u	smal-e	
A. & D. smal-um		
Gen. smæl-ra.		

Thus are declined monosyllables with æ (except fæst) &c., most adjectives with derived endings, and participles past of the Complex Order; some of both the latter, however, follow Declension I. As, læt *late*, *slow*, swær *heavy*, glæd *glad*, bær *bare*, swæs *sweet*, dear, til *good*, eád-ig *blessed*, prosperous, fær-líc *sudden*, dangerous, ge-sib-sum *peaceable*, mæg-er *meagre*, hlutt-or *clear*, fæg-en *glad*, *fain*. Some dissyllables are contracted in certain forms, as, hál-ig *holy*, hál-ge, hál-ges, &c., but gen. plur. hál-igra and the like.

(1) Comp. Nouns III. 1, 3.

V.—*Comparison.*

The Comparative and Superlative Degrees are regularly formed by adding *-or* and *-ost*<sup>(1)</sup>, (E. and G. *-er* and *-est*), to the indefinite form; as, *leóf*, *leóf-or*, *leóf-ost* *dear*, *dear-er*, *dear-est* (G. *lieb*, *lieb-er*, *lieb-est*): æ usually becomes a; as, *smæl*, *smal-or*, *smal-ost*, *small*, *small-er*, *small-est*. (G. *schmal*, *schmäl-er*, *schmäl-est*.) The ending *-or* is however only adverbial; as an adjective the Comparative is formed in *-re*, *-ra*, *-re*, whether used definitely or indefinitely; as, (*þæt*) *leóf-re*, (*se*) *leóf-ra*, (*seó*) *leóf-re* (*the*) *dearer*; (G. *das &c.* *lieb-re*) (*þæt*) *smæl-re* &c. (*the*) *smaller*; (G. *das &c.* *schmäl-re*). The Superlative has both the definite and indefinite inflections, the former in *-ost*, or *-est*, (also the adverbial form), the latter in *-oste*, *-osta*, *-oste*, or *-este* &c.; as, *leóf-ost* *dearest*, *þæt leóf-oste*, or *leóf-este* &c. *the dearest*; (G. *das &c.* *lieb-ste*.)

TABLE OF COMPARISON.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE. Adjective.	SUPERLATIVE.
<i>heard</i>		<i>heard-ost</i>
<i>hard</i>	{ ( <i>þæt</i> ) <i>heard-re</i>	<i>hard-est</i>
<i>þæt heard-e</i>	{ ( <i>the</i> ) <i>hard-er</i>	<i>þæt heard-oste</i>
<i>the hard</i>		<i>the hard-est</i>
	Adverb.	
<i>heard-e</i>	<i>heard-or</i>	<i>heard-ost</i>
<i>hard-ly</i>	<i>hard-li-er</i>	<i>hard-li-est.</i>

(1) Comp. the L. comparative *-ior*; Gr. superlative *τερ-ος*, &c.

## VI.—Irregular Comparison.

The following adjectives are irregularly compared; the change of a into e; æ into a; éú into ý, or é; ea, eo, u, into y, answers to that of the German a into ä, o into ö, u into ü: in English but few traces of this remain. The forms in -me (º) (-ma, -me) are old superlatives, afterwards used as positives, and then again compared. The words between brackets are adverbs, peculiarly formed.

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
lang (º)	lengre (leng)	lengest
long	longer	longest
strang	strengre (strangor)	strengest
strong	stronger	strongest
hræd (hraðe)	hræðre (hraðor)	hraðost
quick, rath	quicker (rather)	quickest
eald	yldre	yldest
old	elder	eldest
neah	nearre (near, nyr)	nyhst, nebst, next
nigh	nigher	nighest, next
heáh	hýrre	hýhst, héhst
high	higher	highest
eád	eádre (éðre, éð)	eádost
easy	easier	easiest
feor	fyrre (fyr)	fyrrest
far	further	furthest
geong	gyngre	gyngest
young	younger	youngest

(º) Comp. L. superlatives in -mum (-mus, -ma).

(º) Comp. G. lang, länger, längst; alt, älter, ältest; nahe, näher, nächst; hoch, höher, höchst; jung, jünger, jüngst; fort, fürtter, stäfster, stäflest; eher, erst; gut, wohl, besser, best; mehr, meist, &c.

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
<i>sceort</i>	<i>scytre</i>	<i>scyrtest</i>
<i>short</i>	<i>shorter</i>	<i>shortest</i>
( <i>ford</i> , <i>furd</i> )	<i>furdre</i> ( <i>furdor</i> )	
( <i>forth</i> )	<i>further</i>	
<i>soft</i>	<i>séftre</i> ( <i>séft</i> )	<i>séftest</i>
<i>soft</i>	<i>softer</i>	<i>softest</i>
<i>ær</i> (¹)	<i>ærre</i> ( <i>ærer</i> , -or)	<i>ærrest</i> (-ost)
<i>early</i> ( <i>ere</i> )	<i>earlier</i> , <i>sooner</i>	<i>(erst)</i> <i>first</i>
<i>gód</i> ( <i>wel</i> )	<i>betere</i> ( <i>bet</i> )	<i>betest</i> , <i>betst</i>
<i>good</i> ( <i>well</i> )	<i>better</i>	<i>best</i>
<i>yfel</i>	<i>wyrse</i> ( <i>wyrs</i> )	<i>wyrrest</i> , <i>wyrst</i>
<i>evil</i>	<i>worse</i>	<i>worst</i>
<i>micel</i>	<i>máre</i> ( <i>má</i> ) (²)	<i>máest</i>
<i>great</i> , <i>miclē</i>	<i>greater</i> , <i>more</i>	<i>greatest</i> , <i>most</i>
<i>lytel</i> ( <i>lyt</i> )	<i>læsse</i> ( <i>læs</i> )	<i>læst</i>
<i>little</i>	<i>less</i>	<i>least</i>
<i>forme</i> ( <i>fore</i> )		<i>fyrnest</i> , <i>fyrst</i>
<i>former</i> , <i>fore</i>		<i>foremost</i> , <i>first</i>
<i>læt</i> , <i>læteme</i> ( <i>late</i> )	<i>lætre</i> ( <i>lator</i> )	<i>latost</i> , <i>lætemest</i>
<i>late</i> , <i>slow</i>	<i>later</i> , <i>latter</i>	<i>latest</i> , <i>last</i>
<i>síð</i> , <i>síðeme</i>	<i>síðre</i> ( <i>síðor</i> )	<i>síðost</i> , <i>síðemest</i>
<i>late</i> , ( <i>since</i> )		
<i>nordémene</i> , ( <i>nord</i> ) (³)	<i>(nordor)</i>	<i>nordemest</i>
<i>northern</i> , <i>north</i>		<i>northmost</i>
<i>úfeme</i> ( <i>úp</i> )	<i>úfere</i> ( <i>úfor</i> )	<i>ýfemest</i>
<i>high</i> ( <i>up</i> )	<i>upper</i>	<i>upmost</i>
<i>æfteme</i> ( <i>æfter</i> )	<i>æftre</i>	<i>æftemest</i>
<i>aft</i> , <i>afier</i>	<i>after</i>	<i>aftmost</i>

(¹) Hence O. *er*; " or ever. †(²) For *már*, to which we have returned: *more*; O. was *me*.(³) Some of these are often formed in -weard; as, *n rœ-weard* *northern*, *north-weard*, *úfe-weard* (*úp-weard*) *upper*, *up-weard*.

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
hindeme	hindere	hindemest
hind	hinder	hindmost
inneme (inn)	innere (innor)	innemest
inner (in)	inner	inmost
úteme (út)	útre (útor)	ýtemest
outer (out)	outer, utter	outmost, utmost
midd, midme		midmest
mid		midmost
niðeme(nider)	niðre (nidror)	niðemest
low (down)	nethcr	nethmost.

## CHAPTER IV.

## I.—Pronouns—Personal.

THE personal Pronouns are ic *I*, þú *thou*, hit, he, heó *it*, he, *she*. The two first are the only A. S. words with a dual number.

## SINGULAR.

N.	ic (4)	þú (5)		
A.	me	þe		
A.&D. me		þe		
G.	mín	þín		
DUAL.	PLURAL.	DUAL.	PLURAL.	
N.	wit (6)	we	git	ge
A.	unc	ús	inc	eów
A.&D. unc		ús	inc	eów
G.	uncer	úre	incer	eówer

(4) Comp. *iγ-w*, *με*, &c. L. *eg-o*, *me*; G. *ich*, *mir*, *wir*, (D. *wij*) *uns*, *unser*.

(5) Comp. (Dor.) *rv*, *rs*; L. *tu*, *te*; G. *du*, *dir*, *euch*, &c. D. *gij*, &c.

(6) Remark a peculiar construction with the dual:—*wit Scilling* *we* two, viz. *I and Scilling*; *healf þes cinges*, *healf uncer Brentingas*, *half the king's, half mine and Brenting's*.

SINGULAR.		
Neut.	Masc.	Fem.
N. hit <sup>(1)</sup>	he	heō
A. hit	hine	hí
A. & D. him		hire
G. his		hire

PLURAL.		
N. & A.	him	hire
A. & D.	him	
G.	hire	

Meh, *mec* (L. *mihi*, G.  *mich*) and þeh, þec (G. *dich*) sometimes occur for me and þe: likewise the poetical *úsih*, *úsic*, and *eówih*, *eówic* for *ús* and *eów*; and *uncit* and *incit*, for *unc* and *inc*.

There being, as in English, no reflective pronoun, the personals are used instead; as, *ic me reste I rest me* (*myself*); *þa þeówas wyrmdon híg, the servants were warming them (-selves)*. *Sylf self, same*, declined as an adjective both definitely and indefinitely (I.), and agreeing with the pronoun or noun, gives a strong reflective sense; as, *ic sylf or sylfa I myself*; *fram me sylfum of myself*; *þú sylf thou thyself*; *we sylfe we ourselves*, &c.; *seó sylfe tíd the same time*.<sup>(2)</sup> Sometimes the pronoun stands in the dative before *sylf*; as, (*ic*) *me sylf I myself*; *him-sylf he himself*.<sup>(3)</sup>

(1) Comp. ð, ð, ðv, ol, al; L. id, is, ea, eum, ejus, ii; G. es, ihn, ihm, ihr; D. bet, hij, &c.

(2) Comp. G. ich selber, wir selben, die selbe zeit, &c.

(3) Like F. moi-même, lui-même; hence seemingly my-self, thy-self, &c.: *self* is properly no more a noun than *être*, L. *ipse*, or F. *méme*.

II.—*Possessives.*

The Possessive Pronouns are formed, as in German, from the genitives of the two first persons; as, míñ (G. mein) *mine, my*; þín (G. dein) *thine, thy*; uncer, úre (G. unser) *our*; incer, eówer (G. euer) *your*: like other Pronouns in general, they are declined as indefinite adjectives I. Those in -er are usually contracted; as uncre, eówres, and the like. U're forms úrum, úres, &c; but remains unchanged in the whole feminine singular. The poetical úser (*ússer*) for úre is thus declined:—

Neut.	Masc.	Fem.
SINGULAR.		
N. úser	úser	úser
A. <u>úser</u>	<u>úserne</u>	ússe
A. & D. ússum		ússe
G. ússes		ússe
PLURAL.		
N. & A. ússe, úser		
A. & D. ússum		
G. ússa.		

The genitive of the third person is used unchanged; *his, its, his, hire her, hira their*. To make these reflective, the genitive of sylf agreeing with the pronoun, or the indefinite adjective ágen *own*, agreeing with the noun, must be used; as, þín sylfes bearn *thine own son*; tó his ágenre þearfe *to his own need*. Sín occurs in poetry as a possessive of the third person; not however like G. sein, for L. ejus, but for L. suus only.

III.—*Demonstratives.*

The Demonstrative Pronouns are þæt, se, seó *that*, likewise the relative *which*, *who*, *that*, and the article *the*; (<sup>1</sup>) and þis, þes, þeós *this*.

Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.
N. þæt <sup>(2)</sup>	se	seó	þis <sup>(3)</sup>	þes	þeós
A. <u>þæt</u>	<u>þone</u>	<u>þá</u>	<u>þis</u>	<u>þisne</u>	<u>þás</u>
Abl. þý	þý		þise		þisse
D. þám	þáre		þisum		þisse
G. <u>þæs</u>	<u>þáre</u>		þises		þisse
N. & A. þa				þás	
A. & D. þám				þisum	
G. þára				þissa	

þæne, þém, þáre, þára, are sometimes used for þone, þám, þáre, þára; likewise þás for þás; the s in þise, &c. is often doubled; þissere and þissera occur also for þisse and þissa. The indeclinable þe is used for all cases of þæt, se, seó, as a relative; combined with it it forms þæt-te<sup>(4)</sup> *that which*, se-þe *he that*, seó-þe *she that*. Þæt, se, seó is sometimes repeated in a sentence, standing first as a demonstrative, and next as a relative; but þe commonly stands as

(<sup>1</sup>) Comp. the threefold use of G. das, der, die.

(<sup>2</sup>) Comp. re, ó, ñ, rov, ra, rot, rat; G. das, den, dem, der, des, &c. D. dat, &c. From seó comes she (G. sie); from þa they, þém them, þára their.

(<sup>3</sup>) Comp. G. dies, &c.; þás and þeós have become those and these.

(<sup>4</sup>) Þætte is also *that* (conjunction) G. dass.

relative in the second place ; as, þæt micle ge-teld  
þe Moises worhte, *the great tent that Moses made.*

þe is sometimes used along with hit, &c. as a relative ; as, þe þurh hine *through whom.*

Swá is sometimes used (like G. so) as an indeclinable relative.

Ylc *same*, follows the indefinite declension.

Swylc *such*, is often repeated, standing in the second place adverbially ; as, Ælc þing on-gitan swylc swylce hit is *to understand each thing so as it is.*

#### IV.—*Interrogatives.*

The Interrogative Pronouns are hwæt, hwá? *what?* who? hwylc? *which?* hwæðer *whether?* which? The first has no plural, and is thus declined :

Neuter.	Masc. & Fem.
Nom. hwæt	hwá
Acc. hwæt	hwone (hwæne)
Abl. hwý	
Dat. hwám (hwæm)	
Gen. hwæs (§)	

It answers to L. quis not qui, and is never used as a relative : with a neuter adjective it governs the genitive ; as, hwæt yfeles? *what evil?* it is also (like G. et-was, was) used not interrogatively, for *somewhat, a little* ; as, hwæt lytles *some little.*

(§) From hwám and hwæs, are whom and whose.

V.—*Indefinites.*

The Indefinite pronouns are swá-hwæt(-swá) *what-so-ever*, swá-hwá (-swá) *who-so-ever*, swá-hwylc (-swá) *which-so-ever*, ség-hwæt (*ge-hwæt*), ség-hwylc, &c. *whatsoever*, &c. which follow the declension of the chief word in the compound. Others are álc, *each*, *every one*, eall *all*, sénig *any*, nánig *none* *whatever*, án-lipig (*séni-lipig*) *single*, *alone*, &c. Ge-noh *enough* is sometimes indeclinable. A'n *one*, a, and sum *some*, a, *a certain*, serve for the indefinite article, which is however often not expressed : sum placed after a genitive cardinal number implies one above it ; as, fíf-tyna sum *one of sixteen*, *one with fifteen others*. Manig (*mænig*) *many* sometimes has nom. and accus. plur. manega. Fela *much*, *many* is indeclinable : feáwa (*feá*) *few*, sometimes has abl. and dat. plur. feáwum, gen. feára ; both often govern a genitive plural ; as, mádma fela *many treasures* ; feá worda *few words*. Man (*man*) is used (like G. *man*, and F. *on*) (\*) indefinitely for *one*, *they* ; as, Me man sægde *they told me* (G. *man sagte mir*). From wiht (*wuht*) *creature*, *being*, (*wight*, *whit*) are formed á-wiht (*á-wuht*) contracted to áwht, áht *anything*, *ought* ; and nún-wiht (*-wuht*) náwht, náht (\*) *nothing*, *nought*. Other indefinite Pronouns are óðer (-or) *other*, *second* (L. *alius*, and alter for *secundus*), áwðer, áðer *one of two* (L. *alter duorum*), náwðer (*náðor*), *neither of two* (L. *neuter*), égðer

(\*) Formerly *hom*, from L. *homo*.(†) Hence not, like G. *nicht* from *ne-wicht*.

*either, each of two.* Oðer forms its oblique cases fem. sing. 6ðre; it sometimes follows indefinite Decl. II.

### VI.—Comparative Table of Cardinal Numbers.

GREEK.	LATIN.	DUTCH.	A. S.	ENGLISH.	GERMAN.
éν	un-um	een	án	one	ein
δuo	duo	twee	twá	two	zwei
τρia	tria	drie	þreo	three	drei
κεττορε (3)	quatuor	vier	feower	four	vier
πεντε	quinque	vijf	fif	five	fünf
ξ	sex	zes	six	six	sechs
έπτα	septem	zeven	seofon	seven	sieben
όκτω	octo	acht	eahta	eight	acht
έννεα	novem	negen	nigon	nine	neun
δεκα	decem	tien	tyn	ten	zehn
DUTCH.	A. S.		ENGLISH.	GERMAN.	
elf	endlufon		eleven	eifl	
twaalf	twelf		twelve	zwölf	
der-tien	þreo-ttyne		thir-teen	drei-zehn	
veertien	feower-tyne		fourteen	vierzehn	
vijftien	fif-tyne		fifteen	funfzehn	
zestien	six-tyne		sixteen	sechzehn	
zeventien	seofon-tyne		seventeen	siebzehn	
achtien	eahta-tyne		eighteen	achtzehn	
negentien	nigon-tyne		nineteen	neunzehn	
twin-tig	twen-tig		twen-ty	zwan-zig	
dertig	þry-ttig		thirty	drei-ssig	
veertig	feower-tig		forty	vierzig	

(\*) Æol. for ressapa.

DUTCH.	A. & S.	ENGLISH.	GERMAN.
vijftig	fíi-tig	fifty	funfzig
zestig	six-tig	sixty	sechzig
zeventig	hund-seofon-tig	seventy	siebzicg
tachtig (')	hund-eahtatig	eighty	achtzig
negentig	hund-nigontig	ninety	neunzig
honderd	{ hund, hundred, hund-teontig }	hundred	hundert
	hund-endlufontig 110		
	hund-twelftig 120		
duizend	púsend	thousand	tausend.

A'n, like all other pronouns, follows indef. Decl. I., sometimes making accus. masc. sénne ; thus too nán none. Used definitely, áne, ána, áne, and standing after its noun, &c., it means *alone*. Twá (\*) and þeo are thus declined :—

Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.
N. & A. twá (tú) twegen (*) twá			þeo	þry	þeo
A. & D. twám (twéam)				þrym	
G. twegra (twega)				þreora.	

Bá, begen, bá *both*, follows twá; prefixed to twá it forms bá-twá (bú-tú) (\*) which is indeclinable. The numbers feower to twelf inclusive, when used absolutely, have a nom. in -e, &c.; as, ealle seofone *all seven*; án of þám twelfum *one of the twelve*; án

(\*) The t- is probably a remnant of the prefix h'ond- retained before the vowel.

(\*) S. tua. G. zwei, zweo.

(\*) Twain. G. zween.

(\*) Hence *both*, G. beide; comp. Italian ambe-due.

*bissa sīfa one of these five.* Those above eahta usually govern a genitive. Twentig and the others in -tig make abl. and dat. -tigum, gen. -tigra. Hund prefixed to the tens after sixtig (answering to -kovr-a, L. -gint-a) is sometimes dropt when hund *hundred* goes before; as, *scipa án hund* and *eahtatig*, *of ships one hundred and eighty*. Hund (*hundred*) follows II. 1; hundred and þúsend, III. 1.

Units are placed before tens, as, *six and fiftig, six and fifty*. In numbers above a hundred, the smaller stands last, and the noun is repeated; as, *Hund-teontig wintra* and *seofon* and *feowertig wintra*, *a hundred winters and seven and forty winters.*(<sup>6</sup>)

Wintre affixed to numbers forms adjectives denoting age; as, *fram twi-wintrum cilde*, *from the child of two years.*

### VII.—Ordinal Numbers.

<i>þæt forme, se forma, seó forme</i>	<i>first</i>
<i>þæt, se, seó óder</i>	<i>second</i>
<i>þæt þry-dde, se þry-dda, seó þry-dde</i> ( <sup>6</sup> )	<i>thir-d</i>
<i>feor-þe, -þa, -þe</i>	<i>four-th</i>
<i>fif-te, -ta, -te</i>	<i>fifth</i>
<i>six-te, — —</i>	<i>sixth</i>
<i>seofo-þe, -þa, -þe</i>	<i>— seventh</i>
<i>eahtoþe — —</i>	<i>eighth</i>
<i>nigoþe</i>	<i>ninth</i>

(<sup>6</sup>) The northern nations reckoned time by winters.

(<sup>6</sup>) Comp. *rpi-reg*, L. *ter-tius*, G. *dri-tis*, *vier-te*, &c.

teōþe	tenth
endlyf-te	eleventh
twelfte	twelfth
þry-tteōðe	thirteenth
feower-teōðe	fourteenth
fif-teóðe	fifteenth
six-teōðe	sixteenth
seofon-teōðe	seventeenth
eahta-teōðe	eighteenth
nigon-teōðe	nineteenth
twentig-oðe	twenti-eth
þryttigode	thirtieth
feowertigode	fortieth
fiftigode	fiftieth
sixtigode	sixtieth
hund-seofontigode	seventieth
hund-eahatigode	eightieth
hund-nigontigode	ninetieth
hund-teontigode	hundredth
hund-endlufontigode	110th
hund-twelftigode	120th

Units combined with ordinal tens stand first when cardinals, last when ordinals; as, *án* and *þryttigode* *one and thirtieth*; *þý twentigodan dæge* and *þý feordan dæge* *Septembris, on the twenty and fourth day of September*.

Healf *half* placed after an ordinal number (like G. *halb*) reduces it by half; as, *óðer-healf* (lit. *second-half*) *one and a half*, (G. *andert-halb*); *þridde-healf*

(lit. *third-half*) *two and a half* (G. *dritte-halb*).<sup>(1)</sup> A'n, twá, þeo, form én-e *once*, twi-wa (tu-wa) *twice*, þry-wa *thrice*; with the other cardinals, and all the ordinals, síð *a time* is used in the ablative for the same purpose; as, feower, fíf, &c. síðum or síðon *four*, *five*, &c. *times*; (þý) forman, óðre, þryddan, &c. síðe *the first, second, third, &c. time*.

---

## CHAPTER V.

### I.—*Verbs. Conjugation.*

THERE are two Orders of Verbs, as of Nouns; viz. the Simple and the Complex; <sup>(2)</sup> the former containing pure or open Verbs answering to the Greek in -αειν, -εειν, and -οειν, and to the Latin in -are, -cre, and -ire; the latter impure or close Verbs, answering to the Greek regulars, and to the Latin in -ēre, &c.<sup>(3)</sup> The Simple Order forms its imperfect by adding -ode (-ede), -de, or -te to the root; the participle past by adding -od (-ed), -d, or -t: in the Complex the imperfect becomes monosyllabic and changes its vowel; the participle past ends in -en.<sup>(4)</sup> The former is divided into three Classes forming one Conjugation; the latter into two Conjugations of three Classes each.

<sup>(1)</sup> Comp. ημισυ-τρίτος, L. *sesqui-alter, -tertius.*

<sup>(2)</sup> Simple Verbs are by Grimm termed Weak, Complex Strong.

<sup>(3)</sup> See Rask's Grammar, pp. 67—70.

<sup>(4)</sup> E. and G. verbs in general follow the A.S., though complex forms have in each not seldom become simple.

## II.—Comparative View of the Chief Tenses.

## SIMPLE ORDER, OR CONJUGATION I.

Examples—luf-ian *to love*, G. lieb-en; hýr-an *to hear*, G. hör-en; tell-an *to tell, reckon*, G. zähl-en.

	Present.	Imperfect.	Part. past.
Class I.	ic luf-ige <i>I love</i>	— luf-ode — lov-ed	(ge-)luf-od lov-ed
	G. ich lieb-e	— lieb-te	ge-lieb-t
Class II.	hýr-e <i>hear</i>	hýr-de hear-d	(ge-)hýr-ed hear-d
	G. hör-e	hör-te	ge-hör-t
Class III.	tell-e <i>tell</i>	teal-de tol-d	(ge-)teal-d tol-d
	G. zähl-e	zählt-e	ge-zähl-t.

## COMPLEX ORDER.—CONJUGATION II.

Examples—brec-an *to break*, G. brech-en; heald-an *to hold*, G. halt-en; drag-an *to draw, drag*, G. trag-en.

	Present.	Imperfect.	Part. past.
Class I.	brec-e <i>break</i>	bræc brake	(ge-)broc-en brok-en
	G. brech-e	brach	ge-broch-en
Class II.	heald-e <i>hold</i>	heóld held	(ge-)heald-en hold-en
	G. halt-e	hielt	ge-halt-en
Class III.	drag-e <i>draw</i>	dróh drew	(ge-)drag-en draw-n
	G. trag-e	trug	ge-trag-en.

## CONJUGATION III.

Examples—bind-an *to bind*, G. bind-en; dríf-an *to drive*, G. treib-en; clúf-an *to cleave*, G. klieb-en.

	Present.	Imperfect.	Part. past.
Class I.	bind-e	band	(ge-)bund-en
	bind	bound	bound-en
	G. bind-e	band	ge-bund-en
Class II.	dríf-e	dráf	(ge-)drif-en
	drive	drove	driv-en
	G. treib-e	trieb	ge-trieb-en
Class III.	clúf-e	cleáf	(ge-)clof-en
	cleave	clave	clov-en
	G. klieb-e	klob	ge-klob-en.

## III.—Simple Order, or Conjugation I.

CLASS I.      CLASS II.      CLASS III.

## INDICATIVE MODE.

## Present.

Sing.	ic luf-ige (')	hýr-e	tell-e
	pú luf-ast	hýr-st	tel-st
	he luf-ad̄	hýr-d̄	tel-d̄
Plur. we, ge, hí luf-iad		hýr-ad̄	tell-ad̄
	luf-ige	hýr-e	tell-e

## Imperfect.

Sing.	ic luf-ode	hýr-de	teal-de
	pú luf-odest	hýr-dest	teal-dest
	he luf-ode	hýr-de	teal-de
Pl. we, ge, hí luf-odon		hýr-don	teal-don

(') Comp. lówe, lów-est, lów-eth; G. lieb-e, lieb-est, lieb-er, &c. L. am-e, -as, -at, &c.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

## Present.

Sing. luf-ige	hýr-e	tell-e
Plur. luf-ion	hýr-on	tell-on
Imperfect.		
Sing. luf-ode	hýr-de	teal-de
Plur. luf-odon	hýr-don	teal-don

## IMPERATIVE MODE.

Sing. luf-a	hýr	tell-e
Plur. { luf-iad	{ hýr-ad	{ tell-ad

## INFINITIVE MODE.

Pres. luf-ian	hýr-an	tell-an
Gerund. tó luf-igenne	—hýr-enne	—tell-anne
Part. pres. luf-igende	hýr-ende	tell-ende
P. past (ge-) luf-od	(ge-) hýr-ed	(ge-) teal-d.

The first form of the present indicative, and of the imperative plural, is used when the pronoun comes first, or is left out; as, we lufiad we love, hýrad hear; the second when the pronoun follows close; as, telle ge tell ye? The subjunctive plural sometimes ends in -an or -en; as, lufian, hýrden, and the like. The gerund, which is always preceded by tó, and seems to be a kind of dative of the infinitive, answers to our infinitive present, active and passive, and to the Latin supines, infinitive future, active and passive, &c.; as, Come þú ús tó for-spillanne? cameſt thou to destroy us? L. nos perditum. Hwæd̄er is édre tó cweðanne? whether is easier to say? L. facilius dictu. Eart þú se-þe tó cumenne eart? art thou he that is (art) to come?

L. qui venturus est. Heð býð tó lufigenne (<sup>1</sup>) *she is (must be, or ought) to be loved*, L. amanda est. The infinitive of the first Class is often formed in -igan, sometimes in -igeān, for -ian, and g is put in or left out in some other forms with little or no change of pronunciation. The Gerund of the third Class sometimes makes -enne for -anne. Ge- may be prefixed to any part of verbs in general, but is oftenest used with the imperfect, and especially with the participle past, though not, as in German, to be considered the sign of the latter. (<sup>2</sup>)

IV.—*Class I.*

Like lufian are conjugated:

Present.	Imperfect.	Part. past.	
hatige	hatode	(ge-)hatod	<i>hate</i>
losige	losode	losod	<i>be lost</i>
clypige	clypode	clypod	<i>call, clepe</i>
fullige	fullode	fullod	<i>baptize</i>
fúlige	fúlode	fúlod	<i>rot</i>
cunnige	cunnode	cunnod	<i>try</i>
wacige( <sup>3</sup> )	wacode	wacod	<i>watch</i>
hangige( <sup>4</sup> )	hangode	hangod	<i>hang</i>
hýrigē	hýrode	hýrod	<i>hire</i>
hergige	hergode	hergod	<i>harry</i>
macige	macode	macod	<i>make</i>
bletsige	bletsode	bletsod	<i>bless</i> .

(<sup>1</sup>) Hence the phrases “house to let,” “he is to blame,” &c.

(<sup>2</sup>) Ge- is seldom used before another prefix.

(<sup>3</sup>) Neut. L. vigilare; act. weccan.

(<sup>4</sup>) Neut. L. pendere; act. hangan, hōn.

Some verbs of this Class, especially those having e for their vowel, form their imperfect and part. past in -ede and ed, as well as -ode and od; as, *herian* to praise, *seglian* to sail, *ge-fremian* to profit, which make *herede*, (*ge-hered*, or *herode*, herod; *seglede*, and the like: -ode and -od are sometimes changed into -ade and -ad. *Swerian* to swear, borrows some tenses from a complex form, making imperf. *swerede* or *swór score*; imp. subj. *swóre*; imper. *swera* or *swere*; part. past (*ge-*)*sworen* *sworn*. *Folgian*, *fyligan*, or *fylian* to follow, has imperf. *folgode*, *fyligde*, or *fylide*; imper. *folga* or *fylig*.

---

### V.—Class II.

The second Class forms its imperfect and participle past in -de and -ed, or in -te and -t, according to its characteristic letter; the hard consonants, viz. t, p, c, x, requiring -te and -t; the soft, viz. d, ð, f, g, w, l, m, n, r, s, taking -de and -ed; as,

Present.	Imperf.	Part. past.	
méte	métte	( <i>ge-</i> )mét	<i>meet</i> ( <i>met</i> )
lette	lette	lett	<i>let, hinder</i>
dyppe	dypte	dypt	<i>dip(-t)</i>
tæce	tæhte	tæht	<i>teach</i> ( <i>taught</i> )
lixe	lixte	lixt	<i>gleam(-ed)</i>
læde	lædde	læded	<i>lead</i> ( <i>led</i> )
sende	sendo	send	<i>send</i>
cýðe	cýðde	cýðed	<i>make known</i>
ge-lýfe	ge-lýfde	ge-lýfed	<i>believe(-d)</i>

Present.	Imperf.	Part. past.	
wrége	wrégde	wréged	<i>be-wray(-ed)</i>
be-læwe	be-læwde	be-læwed	<i>accuse(-d)</i>
fylle	fylde	fylléd	<i>fill(-ed)</i>
týme	týmde	týmed	<i>teem(-ed)</i>
wéne	wénde	wénéd	<i>ween(-ed)</i>
lære	lærde	láred	<i>teach</i>
ræse	rásde	rásed	<i>rush(-ed)</i> .

Some verbs in -gan are contracted; as, þreagan, þreán *to vex, reproach*, twéógan, tweón *to doubt*: pres. þreage or þréá, þreást, þréáð; pl. þreagáð, þréáð, &c.; tweóge or tweó, tweóst, tweóð, &c.; imperf. þréáde, tweúde; part. past þréáð, tweóð.

The second and third persons singular sometimes make -est, -ed, especially when many consonants might otherwise meet; as, nemne (*I*) *name*, nemnest, nemned; imperf. nemde: some have both forms; as, láde, látst, láet, or ládest, láded; part. past láded or láed. Verbs with s, d, and t form the third person in -t; as, ræse, rást; sende, sent; méte, mét: those with ð in ð, as cýðe, cýð: imperf. cýðde or cýdde; p. past cýðed or cýd. Verbs in this and the following classes with a double characteristic, drop one letter and take -e in the imperative; as, dyppe, dype, and the like. To this class belong several transitives, derived from intransitives of the Complex Order; as, bærnan *to burn* (act.), from byrnan *to burn* (neut.); drençan (<sup>1</sup>) *to drench*, from drincan *to drink*; fyllan *to fell*, from

(<sup>1</sup>) Comp. G. tränken, füllen, senken, setzen, from trinken, fallen, sinken, sitzen.

feallan to fall; a-réran to rear, from a-rísan to arise; sencan to sink (act.), from sincan to sink (neut.); settan to set, from sittan to sit; ærnan to let run, from yrnan to run. Lybban to live, and hyrgan to think, borrow some forms from leofian, and hogian: they are thus conjugated:—

Indic. pres. 1. lybbe	Subj. pres. lybbe
2. leofast	plur. lybbon
3. leofad̄	Imparf. leofode
plur. { lybbad̄	plur. leofodon
{ lybbe	Imper. leofa
Imparf. leofode(-st)	plur. { lybbad̄
plur. leofodon	{ lybbe
Infin. pres. lybban	Part. pres. lybbende
Ger. lybbenne	P.past (ge-)leofod.

Hæbban or habban<sup>(1)</sup> to have, has some forms as if from hafian: it is thus conjugated:—

Ind. pres. 1. hæbbe (habbe)	Subj. pres. habbe (hæbbe)
2. hæfst (hafast)	plur. habbon
3. hæfð (hafad̄)	Imparf. hæfde
plur. { hæbbad̄(hafiad̄)	plur. hæfdon
{ hæbbe (habbe)	Imper. hafa
Imparf. hæfde(-st)	plur. { hæbbad̄
plur. hæfdon	{ habbe
Inf. pres. hæbban(habban)	Part. pres. hæbbende
Ger. habbenne	P.past (ge-)hæfed, hæfd.

The first person present is sometimes in poetry hafu

(1) Comp. throughout L. hab-ere, G. hab-en.

or hafo. Nabban (for nehabban) *to have not*, has an Indicative, Subjunctive, and Imperative, following habban.

---

### VI.—*Class III.*

The third Class changes e into ea, é into ö, &c. in the imperfect, forming it in -de or -te, and the part. past in -d or -t by the rules given above. The English synonyms commonly change the vowel in like manner, the German sometimes.

Pres.	Imperf.	Part. past.	
stelle	stealde	(ge-) steald	leap
recce	reahte <sup>(*)</sup>	reaht	reck ( <i>raught</i> )
sylle	sealde	scald	sell ( <i>sold</i> )
secge	{ sægdæ sæðe	{ sægd sæð }      } say ( <i>said</i> )	
lecge	lede	led	lay ( <i>laid</i> )
bycge	bóhte	bóht	buy ( <i>bought</i> )
séce	sóhte	súht	seek ( <i>sought</i> )
bringe <sup>(*)</sup>	bróhte	bróht	bring ( <i>brought</i> )
wyrce	worhte	worht	work ( <i>wrought</i> )

Secge makes 3 sing. pres. segð or sagað; imper. sege or saga. The impersonal þincan (G. dünken) *to seem*, must not be confounded with þencan (G. denken) *to think*. Þincan makes 3 sing. pres. þincð (G. dünkt) {me-)thinks; plur. þincad; imperf. þúhte (G. dünkte) (me-)thought; part. past (ge-)þúht.

(<sup>\*</sup>) Also rehte, &c.; réce, róhte is another form.

(<sup>\*</sup>) Comp. G. bringe, brachte, ge-bracht.

pencan makes imperf. þóhte (G. dachte) *thought*; part. past (ge-)þóht (G. ge-dacht).

A few transitives also from complex intransitives belong to this class; as, a-cwellan *to kill* (*quell*), from a-cwelan *to perish* (*quail*); lecgan<sup>(1)</sup> *to lay*, from liegan *to lie*; weccan *to awaken*, from wacan *to wake*. Willan<sup>(2)</sup> *to will*, and nyllan<sup>(3)</sup> *to will not*, are thus conjugated:

	INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.
Prea.	1. wille	Pres.	{ wille
	2. wilt		{ willon
	3. wile	Imperf.	{ wolde
pl.	{ willad wille		{ woldon
Imperf.	wolde (-st)	Pres.	willan
pl.	woldon	P. pres.	willende
<hr/>			
Prea.	1. nelle	Pres.	nelle(nylle)
	2. nelt	pl.	nellon(nylon)
	3. nele(nyle)	Imperf.	{ nolde
pl.	{ nellað(nyllad) nelle		{ noldon
Imperf.	{ nolde(-st) noldon	Imper.	{ nelle
			{ nellað, &c.
		Infin.	nyllan.

### VII.—Complex Order.

The Complex Order changes the vowel in the imperfect, as in English and German: the imperfect ends

(<sup>1</sup>) Comp. G. legen, wecken, from liegen, wachen.

(<sup>2</sup>) Bovl-eθat, L. veil-e, vol-u; G. woll-en, will, &c. well-te.

(<sup>3</sup>) L. nolle, for ne veile.

with the characteristic, which however if bb becomes f; if g, h: in the second pers. sing. and in the plural h again becomes g.

The Second Conjugation changes certain vowels in the second and third persons sing. present as in German. The part. past sometimes changes its vowel, as in English and German.

Examples—*brecan to break, healdan to hold, dragan to draw, drag.*

## CLASS I.

## CLASS II.

## CLASS III.

## INDICATIVE MODE.

## Present.

Sing.	1. brece <sup>(*)</sup>	healde	drage
	2. bricst	hyltst	drægst
	3. bricð	hylt(healt)	drægð
Plur.	{ brecadð	{ healdadð	{ dragadð
	{ brece	{ healde	{ drage

## Imperfect.

Sing.	1. bræc	heóld	dróh
	2. bráece	heólde	dróge
	3. bræc	heóld	dróh
Plur.	bráecon	heóldon	drógon

## SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

## Present.

Sing.	brece	healde	drage
Plur.	brecon	healdon	dragon
Sing.	bráece	heólde	dróge
Plur.	bráecon	heóldon	drógon

(\*) Comp. G. *breche, brichst, bricht; halte, hältst, hält; plur. brechen, halten, &c.*

	CLASS I.	CLASS II.	CLASS III.
IMPERATIVE MODE.			
Sing.	brec	heald	drag
Plur.	{ brecad { brece	{ healdad { healde	{ dragad { drage
INFINITIVE MODE.			
Pres.	brecan	healdan	dragan
Gen.	tō brecanne	—healdanne	—draganne
P.pres.	brecende	healdende	dragende
P.past.	(ge-)brocen	(ge-)healden	(ge-)dragen.

---

VIII.—*Class I.*

In the First Class e becomes in the second and third persons sing. present, i or y; i remains unchanged, as in German. The imperfect is formed in æ, which in the second pers. sing. and the whole plural becomes ǣ; or in ea: in the part. past i sometimes becomes e; e, o, &c.

First pers. pres.	Third pers.	Imperf.	P. past.
{ sprece <sup>(1)</sup>	spried	spræc	(ge-)sprecen
{ spece	spicd	spæc	specen
<i>speak</i>		spake	spoken
trede	trit	træd	treden
<i>tread</i>		trod	trodden
ete	yt	æt	eten
<i>eat</i>		ate	aten
lese	list	læs	lesen
<i>lease, gather</i>			

(1) Comp. G. spreche, sprach; trete, trat, ge-treten, &c. ge-bäre, -bar, -boren; stehle, stahl, ge-stohlen, &c.

First pers. pres.	Third pers.	Imperf.	P. past.
bidde	bitt	bæd	beden
bid		bade	bidden
sitte	sitt	sæt	seten
sit		sate	sitten
licge	lid	læg	legen
lie		lay	lien, lain
swefe	swefð	swæf	swefen
sleep			
bere	byrd	bær	boren
bear		bare	born
stele	stylð	stæl	stolen
steal		stole	stolen
for-gite	for-git	for-geat	for-giten
forget		forgat	forgotten
gife	gifð	geaf	gifen
give		gave	given

Niman *to take*, makes third pers. pres. nimð; imperf. nam, name, &c. p. past numen. Cuman (cwuman) *to come* makes third pers. cymð; imperf. com (cwom), come, &c. p. past cumen.

Wesan *to be* is thus conjugated:

#### INDICATIVE.

Pres. 1. eom(?)	Imperf. 1. wæs
2. eart	2. wære
3. is (ys)	3. wæs
plur. synd (syndon)	plur. wærón

(?) Comp. *eim-<sup>1</sup>-s, ior-<sup>1</sup>-s*; L. sum, est, sum-us, sunt, sim, er-am, &c.; G. ist, sind, seyd, sey, war, wäre, ge-wesen.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres. sý, (síg, seó)	Imperf. wáre
plur. sýn	plur. wéron
Imper. wes	Inf. pres. wesan
plur. { wesad	Ger. tó wesanne
wese	Part. pres. wesende
	Part. past (ge-)wesen.

With some of these forms the negative ne is thus combined :

Pres. 1. (ic) neom (*I*) am not. 3. nis (nys); imperf. næs, &c.; subj. imperf. nære, &c.

Cwedan to say is thus conjugated :

Indic. pres. cwede, cwyst, cwyð; imperf. cwæd, cwæde, cwæd (*quoth*), pl. cwædon; subj. pres. cwede, imperf. cwæde; part. past (ge-)cweden: it is otherwise regular.

## IX.—Class II.

In the Second Class á becomes æ; ea, y; eá, ý; ó, é, in the second and third persons: the imperf. has é, or eo (e or eo).

First pers. pres.	Third person.	Imperf.	Part. past.
læte(')	læt	let	(ge-)læten
let			
slæpe	slépð	slép	slépen
sleep		slép-t(²)	

(¹) Comp. G. lasse, lässt, liess, ge-lassen; heiße, biess; wachse, wuchs; laufe, läuft, lief, &c.

(²) Slept, lept, swept, wept, are complex forms become simple: sleep, lep, &c., as also bet, are still in P. use.

t pers. pres.	Third person.	Imperf.	Part. past.
te	h��t	{ h��ht <sup>(1)</sup> ) } { h��t }	h��ten
mand			
ige, h��	h��hd��	heng hung	hangen
alde	wylt	we��ld	wealden.
ern, wield			
alle	fyl��	feoll	feallen
l	(feald��)	fell	fallen
axe	wyxd��	weox	weaxen
x, grow			
��te	be��ted��	be��t	be��ten
it		(bet)	beaten
��te	bl��t	ble��t	bl��ten
rifice			
��ape	hl��p��	hle��p	hle��pen
p		lep-t	
��ape	sw��p��	swe��p	sw��pen
cep	(sw��ped��)	swep-t	
��pe	w��p��	we��p	w��pen
ep		wep-t	
��we	cn��w��d��	cne��w	cn��wen
ow		knew	known
��we	he��wed��	he��w	he��wen
w			hewn
��we	gr��wd��	gre��w	gr��wen
ow		grew	grown

<sup>(1)</sup> H  ht is a relic of the reduplication in use in Gothic as in Greek, of which Latin retains several instances; le  lc from l  can to plug (lake), is of like nature.

The imperfects without an accent are of doubtful quantity.

Hátan when meaning *to be called*, has the simple imperfect hátte, but part. past (ge-)háten.

Hó makes pres. plur. hóð, hó; imper. hóh; infin. hangan or hón, and is followed by fangan, fón *to take*.

Cneów and the like often become cnéw &c.

Gangan, gán<sup>(1)</sup> *to go*, dóñ *to do*, and búan *to inhabit, cultivate* (G. bauen, L. colere) are thus conjugated:

INDICATIVE.		
Pres. 1. gange, gá <sup>(2)</sup>	dó	búe
2. gæst	dést	býst
3. gæd	déð	býð
pl. { gád { gá	{ dód { dó	
Imperf. geóng, eóde	dyde	búde

SUBJUNCTIVE.		
Sing. gá	dó	bú
Pl. gán	dón	bún

IMPERATIVE.		
Sing. gang, gá	dó	
Pl. { gád { gá	{ dód { dó	

(1) S. and P. gang, gæ. The contracted forms are most used; eóde is the common imperfect, geóng the poetical.

(2) Comp. G. gehe, gieng, ge-gangen; thue, that, ge-than.

## INFINITIVE.

Pres.	<i>gangan, gán</i>	<i>dón</i>	<i>búan</i>
Ger.		<i>tó dónne</i>	
P. pres.	<i>gangende</i>	<i>dónde</i>	<i>búendo</i>
P. past	<i>gangen, gán</i>	<i>(ge-)dón</i>	<i>(ge-)bún.</i>

---

## X.—Class III.

In the Third Class, a becomes æ; éá, ý, &c. in the second and third persons: the imperfect has ó.

First pers. pres.	Third person.	Imperf.	Part. past.
<i>scace</i>	<i>scæcd</i>	<i>scóc (sceóc)</i>	<i>(ge-)scacen</i>
<i>shake</i>		<i>shook</i>	<i>shaken</i>
<i>fare<sup>(3)</sup></i>	<i>færð</i>	<i>fór</i>	<i>fareñ</i>
<i>fare, go</i>			
<i>hlihhe</i>	<i>hlihð</i>	<i>hlóh</i>	<i>hlogen</i>
<i>laugh</i>			
<i>sleá</i>	<i>slýhð</i>	<i>slóh</i>	<i>slegen</i>
<i>slay</i>		<i>slew</i>	<i>slain</i>
<i>hlade</i>	<i>hlæt</i>	<i>hlód</i>	<i>hladen</i>
<i>lade</i>			<i>laden</i>
<i>grafe</i>	<i>græfd</i>	<i>gróf</i>	<i>grafen</i>
<i>grave, dig</i>			<i>graven</i>
<i>hebbe</i>	<i>hefð</i>	<i>hóf</i>	<i>hafen</i>
<i>heave</i>		<i>hove</i>	
<i>scyppe</i>	<i>scypð</i>	<i>scóp (sceóp)</i>	<i>sceapen</i>
<i>shape, create</i>			<i>shapen</i>
<i>wacse</i>	<i>wæxd</i>	<i>wócs</i>	<i>wæscen</i>
<i>wash</i>			<i>washen</i>

<sup>(3)</sup> G. *fahre*, *fährt*, *fuhr*, *ge-fahren*; *schlage*, *schlug*; *hebe*, *hob*, *ge-hoben*; *scheide*, *schied*, *ge-schieden*, &c.

First pers. pres.	Third pers.	Imperf.	Part. past.
stande	stent	stód	standen
<i>stand</i>		<i>stood</i>	
gale	gæld	gól	galen
<i>enchant</i>			
spane	spænd	spón	spanen
<i>allure</i>			
sceade	scyt	sceóð(?)	sceaden
<i>part, shed</i>			

Sleá makes imper. slýh or sléh; infin. sleán: thus also leán *to blame*, and þweán *to wash*; p. past þwegen, þwogen. Stande sometimes has standest, standed.

### XI.—Conjugation III.

In the Third Conjugation the vowel remains the same in the present; but that of the imperfect is changed in the second person singular, and in the whole plural: the part. past has either the same vowel as these persons, or one near akin.

Examples:—bindan *to bind*, drífan *to drive*, clúfan *to cleave*.

#### CLASS I.

- Sing. 1. bínde
- 2. bintst
- 3. bint

#### CLASS II.

##### INDICATIVE MODE.

###### Present.

- drífe
- drífst
- drífd

#### CLASS III.

- clúfo
- clúfst
- clúfd

(?) P. shed.

Plur.	$\begin{cases} \text{bindad} \\ \text{bindé} \end{cases}$	$\begin{cases} \text{drífad} \\ \text{drífe} \end{cases}$	$\begin{cases} \text{clúfad} \\ \text{clúfe} \end{cases}$
		Imperfect.	
Sing. 1.	band	dráf	cleáf
2.	bunde	drife	clufe
3.	band	dráf	cleáf
Plur.	bundon	drifon	clufon

## SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

Present.

Sing.	binde	drífe	clúfe
Plur.	bindon	drifon	clufon
		Imperfect.	
Sing.	bunde	drife	clufe
Plur.	bundon	drifon	clufon

## IMPERATIVE MODE.

Sing.	bind	dríf	clúf
Plur.	$\begin{cases} \text{bindad} \\ \text{bindé} \end{cases}$	$\begin{cases} \text{drífad} \\ \text{drífe} \end{cases}$	$\begin{cases} \text{clúfad} \\ \text{clúfe} \end{cases}$

## INFINITIVE MODE.

Pres.	bindan	drífan	clúfan
Ger.	bindanne	drífanne	clúfanne
P. pres.	bindende	drífende	clúfende
P. past (ge-)bunden	(ge-)driften	(ge-)clofen.	

## XII.—Class I.

In the First Class, i (y), e, eo, become a (o), ea, æ, in the imperfect, and these in the second person and plural are again changed to u: the part. past has u or o.

First pers. pres.	Third pers.	Imperf.	Part. past.
yrne <sup>(1)</sup>	yrnd	arn	(ge-)urnen
<i>run</i>		<i>ran</i>	<i>run</i>
{ frine	frind	fran	frunen
{ frigne		frægn	frugnen }
<i>enquire</i>			
singe	singd	sang	sungen
<i>sing</i>		<i>sang</i>	<i>sung</i>
drince	drincd	dranc	druncen
<i>drink</i>		<i>drank</i>	<i>drunken</i>
swimme	swimd	swamm	swommen
<i>swim</i>		<i>swam</i>	<i>swum</i>
climbe	climbd	clomm	clumben
<i>climb</i>		<i>clomb</i>	
swelle	swyld	sweoll	swollen
<i>swell</i>			<i>swollen</i>
swelge	swylgd	swealh	swolgen
<i>swallow</i>			
melte	mylt	mealt	molten
<i>melt</i>			<i>molten</i>
gelde	gylt	geald	golden
<i>pay</i>			
helpe	hylpd	healp	holpen
<i>help</i>			<i>holpen</i>
delfe	dylfd	dealf	dolfen
<i>delve</i>			
murne	myrnd	mearn	mornen
<i>mourn</i>			

(1) G. *rinne*, *rann*, *ge-ronnen*; *singe*, *sang*, *ge-sungen*; *trinke*, *trank*; *schwelle*, *schwillt*, *schwoll*, *ge-schwollen*, &c.

First pers. pres.	Third pers.	Imperf.	P. past.
beorge	byrgð	bearh	borgen
<i>save, defend</i>			
weorpe	wyrpd	wearp	worpen
<i>throw</i>			
steorfe	styrfd	stærf	storfen
<i>die, starve</i>			
berste	byrst	bærst	borsten
<i>burst</i>			<i>borsten</i>
þersce	þyrsd	þærsc	þorscen
<i>thresh</i>			
feohte	fyht	feaht	fohten
<i>fight</i>		<i>sought</i>	<i>foughten</i>
{ bregde		brægd	brogden }
{ brede	brit	bræd	broden }
<i>braid, draw</i>			

Weordan<sup>(2)</sup> to be, to become, is thus conjugated:

Indic. pres. sing. 1. weorðe	Subj. pres. weorðe, &c.
2. wyrst	Imperf. wurde, &c.
3. wyrd	Imper. weord
plur. { weordad	plur. { weordad
weorðe	weorðe

Imperf. sing. 1. weard	Infin. pres. weordan
2. wurde	Ger. weordanne
3. weard	Part. pres. weordende
plur. wurdon	P.past (ge-)worden

(2) Comp. throughout G. werden.

XIII.—*Class II.*

In the Second Class, i becomes in the imperfect á, and this in the second person, &c. i: the part. past has likewise i.

First pers. pres.	Third pers.	Imperf.	Part. past.
scíne <sup>(1)</sup>	scínd	scán	(ge-)scinen
shine		shone	
wríte	writ	wrát	written
write		wrote	written
a-ríse	a-ríst	a-rás	a-risen
arise		arose	arisen
be-swíce	be-swícd	be-swáč	be-swicen
deceive			
stíge	stíhd	stáh	stigen
ascend			
a-bíde	a-bíded	a-bád	a-bidén
abide		abode	abiden
grípe	grípd	gráp	gripen
gripe			
ríde	rit	rád	riden
ride		rode	ridden
spíwe	spíwd	spáw	spiwen
spew			
wríðe	wríd	wrád	wriden
writhe, wreath			

(1) G. scheine, schien, ge-schienen; steige, stieg; greife, griff, ge-griffen, &c.

XIV.—*Class III.*

In the Third Class, eō or ú becomes eá in the imperfect; in the second person &c. u: the part. past has o.

First pers. pres.	Third pers.	Imperf.	Part. past.
reóce(*)	rýcd	reác	(ge-)rocen
<i>reek</i>			
sceóte	scýt	sceát	scoten
<i>shoot</i>		<i>shot</i>	<i>shotten</i>
creópe	crýpð	creáp	cropen
<i>creep</i>			
ceówe	cýwd	ceáw	cowen
<i>chew</i>			
leóge	lýhd	leáh	logen
<i>lye</i>			
fleóge	flýhd	fleáh	flogen
<i>fly, flee</i>		<i>flew</i>	<i>flown</i>
beóde		beád	boden
<i>bid</i>		<i>bade</i>	<i>bidden</i>
súce	sýcd	seác	socen
<i>suck</i>			
búge	býhd	beáh	bogen
<i>bow, bend</i>			<i>bown</i>
lúte	lýt	leát	loten
<i>lout, bow</i>			

(\*) G. rieche, roch, ge-rochen; schiesse, schoß, &c.

*Ceósan* *to choose*, makes third pers. pres. cýst; imperf. ceás *chose*, second pers. cure, plur. curon; p. past coren<sup>(1)</sup>.

*Seóðan* *to seethe*, has third pers. sýð; imperf. seáð, sode, &c.; p. past soden *sodden*.<sup>(2)</sup> Thus also others in -san and -ðan.

*Fleóge* is contracted to fleóð, plur. fleóð, fleóð; infin. fleógan, fleón; thus likewise teógan, teón *to draw, tug*: *wreón* *to cover*, and *þeón* *to thrive*, have only the contracted forms.

*Seón* *to see*, makes imperf. seáh or séh, sáwe or sége, &c. imper. seóh or sýh; part. present seónde; part. past (ge-)sewen, or segen.

*Ge-feón* (-feán) *to rejoice*, has imperf. ge-feáh or -féh, ge-fage or -fege; part. past ge-fagen, -fægen. *Beón* *to be*, is defective:

Indic. pres. 1. beó <sup>(3)</sup>	Subj. pres. beó
2. býst	plur. beón
3. býð	Imper. beó
plur. { beóð beó	plur. { beóð beó

Infin. beón. Ger. tó beónne. Part. pres. beónde.

### XV.—*Anomalous Verbs.*

The following verbs are Anomalous, having for the present an old imperfect of the Complex Order, and their imperfect one formed since after the Sim Order.

(1) G. kíss, kor, ge-koren.

(2) G. sieðe, sott. ge-solten.

(3) G. bin, bist.

Pres. 1. 3. A'h, 2. áge, pl. ágon (*owe*); imperf. áhte (*ought*); infin. ágan; p. past. ágen: *own, possess*. Likewise combined with ne; náh, náhte, &c.

An, 2. unne, pl. unnon; imperf. úðe; inf. unnan; p. past (ge-)unnen: *grant*.

Can<sup>(4)</sup> (*can*); 2. cunne or canst, pl. cunnon; imp. cúðe (*could*); inf. cunnan; p. past (ge-)cúð: *know, ken, be able*.

Deáh, duge, dugon; imp. dóhte; inf. dúgan: *be good, brave, worth*.

Dear, dearst, durron; subj. durre: imp. dorste (*durst*); inf. dearan: *dare*.

Ge-man<sup>(3)</sup>, ge-manst, ge-munon: imp. ge-munde; inf. ge-munan: *remember*.

Mæg<sup>(4)</sup>, miht, magon (*may*); subj. mæge (*mage*); imp. mihte (*meahte*) (*might*); inf. magan: *be able*.

Mót<sup>(5)</sup>; móst, móton; subj. móte; imp. móste: *may, might, must*.

Sceal<sup>(6)</sup> (*shall*), scealt (*shalt*), sceolon (*sculon*); subj. scyle; imp. sceolde (*should*); inf. sculan: *owe*.

Wát<sup>(7)</sup> (*wot*), wást, witon; imp. wiste (*wisse*) (*wist*); subj. wíte; imper. wíte, wítad; inf. wítan; ger. tó wítanne (*to wit*); p. pres. wítende; p. past witen: *know*. Thus also nýtan *to know not*.

(<sup>1</sup>) Comp. L. novi *I know*; G. kenne, kann, kannte, konnte, &c.

(<sup>2</sup>) Comp. L. defective me-min-i *I remember*.

(<sup>3</sup>) G. mag, möge, mögte, &c.

(<sup>4</sup>) G. muss, musste, &c.

(<sup>5</sup>) G. soll, sollte, &c.

(<sup>6</sup>) Comp. olda *I know*; G. weiss, wusste, wissen; L. scio; as distinguished from can (*en áwe*) γινώσκω, L. novi.

þearf(<sup>1</sup>), þearft or þurfe, þurfon; subj. þurfe; imp. þorste; inf. þearfan: *need.*

### XVI.—Auxiliaries, &c.

The A. S. has no future tense, the present serving for both: *wille* and *sceal*, like G. *will* and *will*, duty, and the like, and are not like *will* and *shall*, to form a simple future; the present of *beón* has commonly a future power. The past tenses are formed as in English, by the verb *to have*; as, *ic hæbbe* (*ge-*)*lufod* <sup>I</sup><sub>(1)</sub>. The participle past being as in the above forms, the passive throughout by the help of the auxiliaries *weordan*, and *beón* *to be*; as, present *ic eom*, or *weorde* *lufod*<sub>(2)</sub> *I am loved*; imperf. *ic wæs*, or *weard* *lufod*; perf. *ic eom lufod worden* *I have been loved*; pluperf. *ic wæs lufod worden* *I had been loved*; future, *ic beó lufod* *I shall be loved*.

Impersonal verbs are like those of other languages; as, *hit rind* *it rains*; *hit ge-limpd* *it happens*. Some have a passive sense; as, *a-lýfd* *it is allowed, lawful* (L. *licet*); *ge-wyrd* *it is agreed, seems good* (L. *convenit*).

(<sup>1</sup>) G. *darf*, *durfte*.

(<sup>2</sup>) The imperfect is often used for the pluperfect.

(<sup>3</sup>) Comp. G. *ich habe, hatte, werde, wurde, ge-liebt*; *ich bin, war, geliebt worden.*

## CHAPTER VI.

I.—*Formation of Words. Prefixes.*

As in Greek, Latin, German, &c. this branch of the language must be strictly attended to, if we would learn the origin, gender, and inflection of words: it consists of Derivation, and Composition, in both which the A. S. resembles the German. Derivation either modifies the meaning of a word by putting before it a prefix, or changes its part of speech, and inflection, by adding a termination. Composition forms new words by joining one or more together.

The following are the chief prefixes:

un- (on-) (L. *in-*; E. and G. *un-*): un-scyldig (G. *in-schuldig*) *innocent*; un-tigian *to un-tie*.

n- (ne *not*; L. *ne*): n-yllan (for newillan; L. *nolle* or *ne velle*) *to will not, nill*; n-án *none*.

mis- (E. *mis-*; G. *miss-, misse-*): mis-truwian (G. *mis-trauen*) *to mis-trust*; mis-dáed (G. *misse-that*) *mis-leed*.

wan-<sup>(4)</sup> (*wana wanting*): wan-hál *unhealthy*.

to-<sup>(5)</sup> (L. *dis-*; G. *zer-*): to-brecan (L. *dis-rumpere*, G. *zer-brechen*) *to break in pieces*; to-drífan (L. *dis-sellere*, G. *zer-treiben*) *to scatter, drive away*.

(4) Hence O. *wan-hope* (D. *wan-hoop*) *despair*; *wan-trust* (D. *wan-rouw*) *mis-trust*.

(5) Hence O. *to-broken*, *to-torn* &c. The prefix *to-* must be carefully distinguished from the preposition *tó*.

for-(<sup>1</sup>) (L. *per-*; E. *for-*; G. *ver-*): for-beódan (G. *ver-bieten*) *to for-bid*; for-swerian (L. *per-jurare*) *to for-swear*; for-gán *to for-go*; for-bærnan (G. *ver-brennen*) *to burn up, consume*; for-gifan (G. *ver-geben*) *to give away, for-give*.

wider- (*wid* *against*; G. *wider-*): wider-saca (G. *wider-sacher*) *adversary*.

and- (*ávti*; G. *ant-*): and-wlíta (G. *ant-litz*) *coun-tenance*.

ge- (G. *ge-*; L. *com-, con-, co-*): has in general a collective sense; as, ge-bróðra (G. *ge-brüder*) *brethren*; ge-scý (G. *ge-schuhe*, F. *chaussure*) *shoes*; ge-mæne (G. *ge-mein*, L. *com-mune*) *common*; ge-fera (G. *ge-fährte*, L. *com-es*) *companion*; it forms active verbs from neuters, nouns, &c. as, ge-standan *to urge*; ge-hencan (G. *ge-denken*) *to think of, remember*; ge-strangian *to strengthen*; ge-leánian *to reward*; ge-níderian *to de-grade, condemn*; from standan, hencan, strang, leán (*reward*), níder; or gives a figurative sense; as, biddan *to ask, beg*, ge-biddan *to pray*. Many words, however, take ge- without any change of meaning; as, seón, ge-seón *to see*; hýran, ge-hýran *to hear, obey*; mearc, ge-mearc *mark, limit*; rúm, ge-rúm *wide, roomy*.

be- (E. and G. *be-*) makes neuter verbs active; as, gán *to go*, be-gán *to commit, &c.* (G. *gehen, be-gehen*); feran *to go*, be-feran *to travel over* (G. *fahren, be-fahren*). It is sometimes privative; as, byegan *to buy*, be-byegan *to sell*; be-heáfdian *to be-head*: often in-

(<sup>1</sup>) Hence O. *for-done*, *for-spent*, &c. The prefix *for-* must not be confounded with the preposition *for*, which seems not to occur in composition.

tensive; as, *reáfian* *to rob*, *be-reáfian* *to be-reave* (G. *rauben*, *be-rauben*); *be-gyrdan* (G. *be-gürten*) *to be-gird*; or otherwise modifies the sense; as, *be-healdan* *to be-hold*, *be-sprecan* (G. *be-sprechen*) *to be-speak*, *ed-* (*again, re-*): *ed-niwian* *to re-new*.  
*sin-* (*simile always*, L. *semper*): *sin-grén* *ever-green*.  
*sam-* (L. *semi-*): *sam-cuce*<sup>(\*)</sup> *half-quick*, *half-dead*, *æg-* or *ge-* gives pronouns and adverbs an indeterminate sense; as, *æg-hwylc* (*ge-hwylc*) *each, every*, *æg-hwider* *whithersoever*.

## II.—Nominal Terminations.

The following are the chief Nominal Terminations, denoting for the most part persons:

*-a*<sup>(\*)</sup>: *cemp-a* *warrior, champion*; *hunt-a* *hunter*; *bog-a* *bow*.

*-ere*: (E. and G. *-er*; L. *-or*): *reáf-ere* (G. *räub-er*) *robber*; *sæd-ere* (L. *sat-or*) *sow-er*.

*-end* (from the part. pres.): *Hæl-end* (G. *Heil-and*) *Saviour, healer*; *weald-end* *ruler*.

*-e*: *hyrd-e* *herd, keeper*; *sig-e* *victory*; *riht-wís-e* *righteousness*.

*-el, -ol, -l* (E. *-le*; G. *-el*): *byd-el* (G. *bed-el*) *herald*, *bead-le*; *gaf-ol* *tribute, gav-el*; *set-l* (G. *sess-el*) *seat, sett-le*.

*-ing*: *ædel-ing* *prince, young noble*; *Woden-ing* *son of Woden*; *earm-ing* *poor wretch*.

(\*) *Cuc, cucu, cucen, cwic (-e)* are also found.

(\*) Answering sometimes to L. *-o*; as, *gum-a*, L. *hom-o* *man, green*; hence *brydgum* a G. *bräuti-gam*, *bride-groom*.

**-ling** (E. *-ling*; G. *-lein, -ling*): *cnæp-ling* (G. *knäb-lein*) *little boy*; *deór-ling* (G. *theuer-ling*) *darling*.

**-incle** (L. *-uncul-us, -a*): *ráp-incle* *little rope*.

**-en** (E. *-en*; G. *-chen*): *mægd-en* *maid-en*, from *mægd* *maid* (G. *magd, mäd-chen*); *cyc-en* *chick-en*, from *cocc* *cock*.

**-en** (E. *-en*): *þeód-en* *sovereign*; *byrð-en* *burth-en*.

**-en** (E. *-en*; G. *-in*). Feminines from masculines sometimes change the vowel; as, *þen*, *þin-en* *slave, female slave*; *fox*, *fyx-en* (G. *fuchs, füchs-in*) *fox, viz-en*; sometimes not; as, *þeów*, *þeów-en* *slave*. Some change the vowel, and take *-e*; others change the vowel only; as, *mearh, myr-e* *horse, mare*; *wulf, wylf* (G. *wolf, wölf-in*) *wolf, she-wolf*.

**-estre** (E. and D. *-ster*): *sang-estre* (D. *zang-ster*) *song-ster*, from *sangere* *singer*; *sæm-estre* *seam-ster*, from *sæm-ere* *seamer, tailor*.<sup>(1)</sup>

The following denote a state, action, or the like:

**-dóm** (E. *-dom*; G. *-thum*): *wís-dóm* *wis-dom*; *cyne-dóm*<sup>(2)</sup> (G. *könig-thum*) *king-ship*.

**-hád** (E. *-head, -hood*; G. *-heit*): *mæden-hád* *maid-en-head*; *cild-hád* (G. *kind-heit*) *child-hood*.

(1) In *songstr-ess*, *seamstr-ess*, a Latin-French termination has been super-added. *Huck-ster*, *malt-ster*, *tapp-ster*, and the like, are the true feminines of *hawk-er*, *malt-er*, *tapp-er*, &c. *Spin-ster* is yet rightly used.

(2) We have confounded *-dom* and *-ric*, but *-dóm* was properly the *office, rank, -rice the territory*: thus, *cyne-dóm*, *cyne-ricc* (G. *könig-reich*); *bisceop-dóm*, *bisceop-ricc*, and the like.

-scipe (E. -ship; G. -schaft): hléford-scipe *lord-ship*; freónd-scipe (G. freund-schaft) *friend-ship*.

-lác (E. -lock): wíf-lác, *wed-lock*.

-ad, -od: hunt-ad *hunting*; war-od *sea-shore*.

-ud, -ð (E. th; G. -end): geóg-ud (G. jug-end), *youth*; treów-ð *troth, truth*.

-leást (-lýst; from adj. in -leás): gýme-leást *heedlessness*.

-ung, -ing (E. -ing; G. -ung): hálg-ung (G. heilung) *hallow-ing*; leorn-ing *learn-ing*.

-nes (-nys, -nis: E. -ness; G. -niss): car-leás-nes *careless-ness*; ge-líc-nes (G. gleich-niss) *like-ness*.

-u, -eo, -o (G. -e): hát-u (G. hitz-e) *heat*; mænig-eo (G. meng-e) *many, multitude*; bræd-o (G. breit-e) *breadth*.

-els (E. -le; G. -el): ræd-els (G. räths-el) *ridd-le*; sticc-els (G. stach-el) *stick-le, sting*.

-ed: rec-ed *mansion*; eow-ed *flock*.

-m (E. -om; G. -en): bot-m (G. bod-en) *bott-om*.

-ot, -et, -t: þeow-ot, þeow-t *slavery*; bærn-et *burning*.

-d, -t (E. -ih, -d, -t; G. -t): ge-byr-d (G. ge-bur-t) *bir-th*; ge-cyn-d *kin-d*, *nature*; mih-t (G. mach-t) *migh-t*.

-ræden (ræd *counsel*): hiw-ræden *house-hold*; mæg-ræden *relationship*.

### III.—Adjectival Terminations.

-e: ædel-e *noble*; fæg-e *fated, fey*.

-ig (E. -y, G. -ig): dreórig (G. traur-ig) *drear-y*; hys-ig *bus-y*.

-líc (E. *-like*, -ly, G. *-lich*): leóf-líc (G. lieb-lich) *love-ly*; wíf-líc (G. weib-lich) *woman-like, woman-ly*.

-isc (E. *-ish*, G. *isch*): cild-isc (G. kind-isch) *child-ish*; Engl-isc (G. engl-isch) *Engl-ish, Anglo-Saxon*.

-sum (E. *-some*, G. *-sam*): lang-sum (G. lang-sam) *tedious, long-some*; wyn-sum (G. wonne-sam) *amiable, win-some*.

-ol (-ul) (L. *-ul-us*): sprec-ol *talkative*.

-en (E. and G. *en*): fleax-en (G. flachs-en) *flax-en*; hæð-en *heath-en*.

-bære (beran *to bear* : G. *-bar*) : lust-bære (G. lust-bar) *pleasant*; wæstm-bære *fruitful*.

-cund (cynn *kind, race*): woruld-cund *worldly*.

-iht (G. *-icht*): þorn-iht (G. dorn-icht) *thorny*.

-weard (adj. and adv.; E. *-ward*): tō-weard *toward, to come*; hám-weard *home-ward*.

-feald (E. *-fold*): án-feald *single, one-fold*; twi-feald, *two-fold*; manig-feald *mani-fold*.

-leás (E. *-less*, G. *-los*): syn-leás (G. sünd-e-los) *sin-less*; ár-leás (G. ehr-los) *void of honour, impious*.

-wís (*wise*): ge-wís (G. ge-wiss) *certain*; riht-wís *righteous*.

-ern (E. *-ern*): súd-ern *south-ern*.

-tyme: hefig-tyme *troublesome*.

#### IV.—*Verbal Terminations.*

-ian (-igan, -igean) forms verbs (I. l.) from nouns, adjectives, and particles; as, cear-ian *to care*, ge-hýrsúmian *to obey*, wiðer-ian *to oppose*; from cearu *care*, ge-hýrsúm *obedient*, wiðer *against*.

C, g, n, or s, sometimes stands before -ian; as, gear-c-ian *to prepare*, syn-g-ian *to sin*, wít-n-ian *to punish*, mær-s-ian *to magnify*; from gearu *ready*, yare, syn *sin*, wíte *punishment*, mære *great, famous*.

-án is contracted from -angan, -ágan, or -agan, and -ahan; as, gangan, gán *to go*; smeágan, smeán *to consider, enquire*; þreagan, þréán *to vex*; sleahan, sleán (G. schlagen) *to strike, slay*.

-ón is contracted from -angan, or -ógan; as, fangan, fón *to take*; teógan, teón *to draw, tug*.

-ettan: hál-ettan *to hail, greet*, from hál *whole, hale*.

After c and g, e is not seldom inserted; as, rác-ean, þicg-ean, for rác-an *to reach*, þicg-an *to touch, taste*, &c.

Other verbs in general form the infinitive in -an.

#### V.—Particles.

Adverbs, prepositions, and conjunctions, are either primitive words, that is, not to be further resolved in the language treated of, or are formed from nouns (often obsolete), adjectives, &c. governed by a preposition expressed or understood. Of the former kind are nú *now*, geó (iú), *formerly*, eft *again*, get (iet), yet, be by, &c. for *for*, tó *to*, ac *but*, gif *if*, &c. Of the latter kind, (to take the cases in order) are the accusatives on-weg (a-weg) *a-way*; on-bæc (under-, ofer-bæc) *a-back*, back; (on-)ge-mang *a-mong*; on-gean (a-gen) *a-gain*, *a-against*; ealne-weg *al-way*.

-e (abl. or dat.) forms many adverbs from nouns, adjectives,<sup>(1)</sup> &c.; as, on-riht-e (L. rect-e) <sup>(2)</sup> a-riht *a-right, rightly*; lang-e (L. long-e) *long*; mid-ealle *altogether*; be-dæle *partly*; tō-sóðe *in sooth, truly*; of-dúne, a-dún *a-down, down*; tō-gædere (*æt-gædere*), tō-somne (*æt-somne*, G. zu-samnen), *together*.

líc-e (E. -ly; the same, borrowed from adjectives in -líc): sceort-líc-e *short-ly*, strang-líc-e *strong-ly*.

Other ablatives are the conjunctions for-pý *therefore*; (for-) hwý? *(for) why?*; datives for-pám *because*, tō-pón-pæt *in order that*, síð-pán (G. seit-dem) *since*.

-um, -on (abl. or dat. plur.): (on) hwíl-um, hwíl-on *whilome, whiles*, wundr-um *wondrously*, hwyrft-um *by turns*, sticce-málum<sup>(3)</sup> *piece-meal*, be lytl-um and lytl-um *by little and little*, furð-um (-on) *even, just*, on-sundr-on *in-sunder, a-sunder*.

-es (genitive): niht-es<sup>(4)</sup> (νυκτ-ος, G. nacht-s) *of a night, by night*, will-es *willingly*, néd-es *of necessity, needs*, eall-es *altogether*, nall-es *by no means, sôd-es of a truth*, tō-gean-es *against*, tō-midd-es *amidst*.

-a, -unga, -inga (perhaps gen. plur.): gear-a *of*

(1) Those in -h and -u take g and w, as, heáh, heág-e; nearu, nearwe: see Adjectives Def., and Indef. I.

(2) L. adverbs in -e were perhaps ablatives, like those in -o, as ver-e and the like.

(3) Stic (II. 1) *piece, bit, (steak)* (G. stück); mál (II. 3) (G. mahl) *meal, time of eating, milking cow, &c.*

(4) The proper genitives of niht, willa, and néd (neód) are nihte, willan, néde; at an early stage of the language, all nouns formed the gen. in -es or s; comp. the many Gr. and L. genitives in -ος &c. and -is.

*yore, son-a soon, forthwith, eall-unga altogether, hol-inga ia vain, yrr-inga angrily.*

-an (an oblique case): *níw-an of late, newly, for-an before, on-midd-an, a-midd-an a-mid, wid-út-an without, búf-an<sup>(\*)</sup> (for be-úf-an) a-above; a-bút-an (for on-be-út-an) a-about, &c.*

Other adverbial terminations are:—

-der (*motion to—*): *hi-der hi-ther, þi-der thi-ther, hwi-der whi-ther.*

-on, -an (*motion from—*): *heon-on hence, þan-on thence, hwan-on whence.*

-r, -ra, -e, &c. (*rest in—*): *her here, þær (þara) there hwaer (hwar) where; inn-e within, út-e without.*

## VI.—Composition.<sup>(\*)</sup>

The A. S. language, like the Greek, German, &c. abounds in compound words, of which the last part commonly settles the part of speech. Nouns and adjectives are usually compounded together, and with verbs, without change, as in English, &c.; as, *fíc-treów fig-tree, heáfod-man (G. haupt-mann) head-man, captain, heáh-sacerd, high-priest, bisceop-ríce bishop-ric, stæf-cræft letter-craft, grammar, medo-ærn<sup>(?)</sup> mead-hall, þeow-boren slave-born, stede-fæst stead-fast, bealo-full baleful, snáw-hwít (G. schnee-weiss) snow-white, fren-heard (G. eisen-hart) as hard as iron, lif-fæstan*

(\*) D. boven; “Oranje boven!”      (\*) See Raak, pp. 113—117.

(\*) Or -ern; sealter-n salt-ern.

*to quichen, ful-fremman* (G. voll-bringen) *to ful-fil,* and the like.

A noun, however, standing first, is often put in the genitive case, especially in local names; as, dómē-dæg *doom's-day*, hilde-byrne *war-corset*; Engla-land *England, land of the Angles*; Cant-wara-burh *Canterbury, burgh of the Kenters*; Cinges-tún *King's-town, Kingston*; Beorminga-hám *Birming-ham, home of the Beormings*; Oxena-ford *Ox-ford, ford of oxen*; from dóm, hild, Engle, Cant-ware, cing, Beorming, oxa. One or each part is sometimes shortened, &c.; as, frum-cenned *first-born*, æl-beorht *all-bright*, mild-heort *mild-hearted*; from fruma *beginning*, eall, milde, heorte. Prepositions and adverbs commonly stand before verbs, &c. without change, as in English, German, &c.; as, ymb-gang (G. um-gang) *circuit*; þurh-faran (G. durch-fahren) *to go through*; wið-standan (G. wider-stehen) *to with-stand*; tó-cyme *coming to* (L. ad-ventus); fore-rynel *fore-runner*; fore-mihtig (L. prae-potens) *very mighty*; úp-riht (G. auf-recht) *up-right*; úp-stígan<sup>(1)</sup> (G. auf-steigen) *to go up*; niðer-stígan (G. nieder-steigen) *to go down*; ford-gán (G. fort-gehen) *to go forth*; út-lág *out-law* (L. ex-lex); ofer-cuman *to over-come*; ofer-mód (G. über-muth) *pride*; under-niman (G. unter-nehmen) *to under-take*; fram-ge-wítan *to depart from*; in-lédan (G. ein-leiten) *to lead in*; geond-geótan *to pour through, suffice*; on-gean-cyrran *to turn back again*; of-sceótan

(1) Stígan (G. steigen) answers to L. scandere; ad-scendere, de-scendere, &c.

(G. ab-schießen) *to shoot off*; æfter-fyligend successor, one who follows after; mid-síðian to travel with; sundor-spræc conversation apart; samod-(sam)-wyrcan to work together, co-operate.

The preposition be, bi, usually becomes big in composition; as, big-spel (G. bei-spiel) *example, parable*; big-standan (G. bei-stehen) *to stand by*; it may thus be known from the particle be, which sometimes becomes bi; as, be-standan, bi-standan (G. be-stehen) *to stand on, occupy.*<sup>(2)</sup> On often becomes an- or a-; as, on-bídan, an-bídan, a-bídan *to a-bide*. Æt and od in composition often mean *from, away*; as, æt-berstan *to burst away*, od-yrnan *to run away, escape*, like G. ent-bersten, -rinnen.

Particles are also freely compounded together.

Prepositions, and other particles in composition, are often parted from their verb, as in German; but the same rules can hardly be given in A. S.

In general, þurh, úp, niðer, tó, forð, út, in, on, bi (big) are separable; a-, an-, be-, ge-, ed-, un-, or-, mis-, od-, and-, wið-, sam-, for-, to-, are inseparable; æt, of, &c. are rarely separated.

## CHAPTER VII.

### I.—*Syntax.*

THE A.S. Syntax in general resembles that of Greek and German; but it bears the closest likeness, with some remarkable points of difference from that and other

(2) See Formation of Particles.

tongues, to the Latin, with which it should be compared throughout. The concords agreeing in A. S. with those in Latin, &c. need not be repeated. With regard to the construction of sentences it may be observed, that the verb often stands after both the subject and the object, coming last of all, as for the most part in German; as,

On þære týde þa Gotan wið Rómana-ríce ge-winn úp-a-hófon, *at that time the Goths raised up war against the Roman empire.*

Þa Darius ge-seáh þæt he ofer-wunnen beón wolde, þa wolde he hine sylfne on þám ge-feohte for-spillan, *when Darius saw that he should be overcome, then he would lose his life in the fight.*

We sceolon mid biternysse sóðre be-hreow-sunge úre mód ge-clénsian, *we must with the bitterness of true repentance cleanse our mind.*

Often, however, sentences are in this and other respects framed as in English; and on the whole this part of the grammar will not prove difficult to the student, and may be better learned from reading than from any rules that might be given.

## II.—Syntax of Nouns.

Nouns of time answering to the question, “ how long ? ” are put in the accusative or ablative; as,

Ealle wucan *all the week.*

þrý dagas, or þrym dagum *three days.*

Answering to the question “ when ? ” they stand in the ablative, dative with on, or genitive; as,

pý feordan dögore *on the fourth day.*

On þisum geare *in this year.*

Ussa tída(<sup>1</sup>) *in our times.*

Measure, value, age, and the like, are used in the genitive; as,

Twegra elna heáh *two ells high.*

Ynces lang *an inch long.*

þreora mila brád *three miles broad.*

Sex peninga wyrðe *worth six pence.*

A'nes geares lamb *a lamb of one year.*

The matter to which a measure, &c. is applied, stands in the genitive; as,

Hund mittena hwætes *a hundred measures of wheat.*

Hund-teontig punda goldes *a hundred pounds of gold.*

It sometimes remains unchanged; as,

Twegen marc gold(<sup>2</sup>) *two marks of gold.*

Quality, praise, or blame, stands in the genitive; as,

A'r-wyrðre yldo *of venerable age.*

Fægeres and-wlitan *of fair countenance.*

Two ablatives or datives are used absolutely like the L. double ablative; as,

Ge-togene þý wæpne(<sup>3</sup>) *the weapon (being) drawn.*

A-fundenum sceápe *the sheep (being) found.*

Two datives, the latter governed by tó, are used like the L. double dative; as,

þæt he ús tó fultume sý(<sup>4</sup>) *that he may be (for) a help to us.*

(<sup>1</sup>) Comp. F. de nos temps.

(<sup>2</sup>) G. zwei mark gold.

(<sup>3</sup>) L. stricto telo; ova repartâ.

(<sup>4</sup>) L. ut nobis auxilio sit.

The means or instrument stands in the ablative or dative, with or without the preposition *mid*; as,

*Hine mid þy heofon-lícan weg-nyste ge-trymmende strengthening himself with that heavenly viaticum.*

*þy betstan leóðe ge-glenged adorned with the best lay.*

*Heó hí sylfe mid cyne-lícum reáfe ge-frætwode she adorned herself with royal attire.*

*Híg sprecad niwum tungum they shall speak with new tongues.*

---

### III.—Syntax of Adjectives.

Adjectives in general, especially those denoting want, desire, knowledge, remembrance, and the like, have a genitive case of the noun which defines them, and often stand after it; as,

*Feos wana wanting money.*

*Freónda leás lacking friends.*

*Hrægles þearfa devoid of raiment.*

*Earn ætes georn an eagle eager for food.*

*Ac ic heora eom swíðe gifre but I am very greedy of them.*

*Bóca gleáw skilful in books.*

*Un-wís God-cundan Naman ignorant of the Divine Name.*

*Hí næron his ge-myndige they were not mindful of him.*

*Módes blíðe blithe of mood.*

*Sídes wérig weary of travel.*

*Mægenes strang strong of might.*

I'sig federa *icy of wings.*

They sometimes take an ablative; as,

Wintrum geong *young in years.*

Blind bám eágum *blind of both eyes.*

Adjectives denoting pleasure, profit, injury, and the like, govern a dative; as,

þeáh he him leóf wære *though he were dear to them.*

Eallum and-feng *acceptable to all.*

þæt he mynster-lícum cumum ge-pensum wære *that he might be serviceable to the monastic guests.*

Rinca ge-hwylcum un-nyt *useless to every man.*

Derigend-líc býð þe it will be *hurtful to thee.*

Full full, wyrðe *worthy*, scyldig *guilty*, have an ablative, dative, or genitive; as,

Full Hálgom Gásste *full of the Holy Ghost.*

Full deádra bána *full of dead bones.*

Se wyrhta is wyrðe his metes *the workman is worthy of his meat.*

Se býð dóme scyldig *he shall be guilty of the judgment.*

He is deádes scyldig *he is guilty of death.*

Ge-líc *like*, has a dative or genitive; as,

Híg synd ge-líce þám cildum<sup>(1)</sup> *they are like the children.*

Nán man nis his ge-líca *no man is like him.*

The word which determines a comparative stands before it in the ablative neuter; as,

þrym mundum hýrra *three hands higher.*

(1) Thus L. similes pueris; ejus similis.

Micle má much more.

þý weordra so much the worthier.

Comparatives require either *bonne* or *þe than*, with a nominative, or an ablative or genitive without ; as,

Ge synd sélran bonne manega spearwan, or ge synd beteran manigum spearwum *ye are better than many sparrows.*

O'ðer-healf gear læs þe þrittig wintra *a year and a half less than thirty years.*

Se is his mára *he is greater than him.*

Superlatives take a genitive ; as,

Ealra wyrta mést *greatest of all herbs.*

\* \* \* For the Syntax of Pronouns see Chapter IV.

#### IV.—Syntax of Verbs.

Verbs, as in other tongues, agree in number with their subject; after *ælc þára* (*þéra*) *þe each of them that, every one that*, however, the singular is used, agreeing with *ælc* and not with *þára*; as,

*Ælc þára þe tó me cymð* (lit. *each of them that cometh—*) *every one that cometh to me.*

*Swá ge-býradt ælcum þára þe wind so it befitteh every one that contendeth.*

With a noun of multitude the verb may be either singular or plural; as,

*þá com micel mænigeo and tó him éfstan then came a great multitude and hastened to him.*

Transitive verbs in general, as in other tongues, govern the direct object in the accusative case; as,

Lufa þínne nextan *love thy neighbour.*

Seó sá ge-tácnad þás and-weardan woruld the  
sea betokeneth this present world.

A'xian to ask, takes a double accusative ; as,

Nán ne dorste hine nán þing māre áxian no one  
durst ask him anything more.

Verbs of naming have an accusative of the object  
named, and a nominative of the name ; as,

pone un-ge-met líce eargan þú miht hárana hara  
the immoderately timid thou mayest call hare.

Rádan to rule, a-bregdan to draw (*a weapon*), and  
to-bregdan to cast off (*sleep*,) govern the ablative : as,

þenden hí þý ríce rádan móston while they might  
rule the realm.

A'n of þám þý swoorde a-bræd one of them drew  
his sword.

Mid-þý heó þá þý slæpe to-bræd when she then  
had cast off sleep.

Verbs of bidding, forbidding, serving, following, obeying,  
consenting to, opposing, pleasing, trusting, injuring,  
profiting, escaping from ; likewise for-swerian to for-  
swear, cídan to chide, árian to honour, spare, beorgan  
to save, defend, déman to judge, oleccan to flatter,  
\*stillan(<sup>1</sup>) to still, fylstan to succour, efen-læcan to  
imitate, ge-nea-læcan to approach, and heorcnian to  
hearken to, govern the dative ; as,

Un-clénum gástum be-být he commandeth the un-  
clean spirits.

Ne for-beóde ge him forbid him not.

(<sup>1</sup>) The verbs marked thus \* sometimes govern the accusative.

Ne mæg nán man twám hláf-ordum þeowian no  
*man can serve two lords.*

Heó him þenode *she served him.*

þa sceáp him fyligeað *the sheep follow him.*

þa se wer hýrde his waldende *then the man obeyed his ruler.*

Gif þú þonne Dryhtne ge-hýrsumast *if thou then obeyest the Lord.*

þes ne ge-þwárede heora ge-þeahte *this (man) agreed not to their counsel.*

Ge þafiad eówera fædera weorcum ye consent to *your fathers' works.*

Him ne wið-stent nán þing no thing withstandeth *him.*

Nemne him wyrd for-stóde unless fate had opposed *him.*

Eallum his wordum wið-cwádon and wið-wunn-on *(they) contradicted and opposed all his words..*

Pilatus wolde þám folce ge-cweman *Pilate would please the people.*

Heó on-gan his wordum truwian *she began to trust his words.*

Ne derode Iobe náht þæs deófles costnung, a  
*fremode the devil's temptation hurt Job no whit, but profited him.*

Hú heó þám feónd-lícum gástum od-fleón  
*image how she may escape from the hostile spirits.*

Síð-þán hí feóndum od-fa ren hæfdon when they  
*had escaped from the enemies.*

*Ac he sige-wæpnum for-sworen hæfde but he had  
forsworn the weapons of victory.*

*Gif þín bróðer syngad cé him if thy brother sin-  
neth chide him.*

*Þú nelt árian þáre stówe thou wilt not spare the  
lace.*

*Beorh þínum feore save thy life.*

*Démað him be eówre á judge him by your law.*

*He wolde him oleccan mid his hearpan he would  
flatter them with his harp.*

*Y'dum stilde he stilled the waves.*

*Him fylston wel gistas síne his guests succoured  
him well.*

*Uton for-þý ge-efen-læcan þisum men let us  
therefore imitate this man.*

*þám deáðe ge-nea-læcende drawing nigh to death.*

*Ypolitus heora wordum heorcnaðe Hippolytus  
hearkened to their words.*

Verbs of motion, and likewise on-drædan *to dread*, often have a redundant dative of the subject; as,

*Gá þe forð<sup>(1)</sup> go forth.*

*He him hám-weard ferde he journeyed homeward.*

*Him þá Scyld ge-wát then Scyld departed.*

*He him on-dræt<sup>(2)</sup> monigne feónd he dreads many  
a foe.*

Wealdan *to wield, govern, \*on-fón to receive, \*milt-  
sian to pity, hlystan to listen to, helpan to help, \*ge-  
lýfan to believe, wið-sacan to deny, ge-feón to rejoice  
at, \*hrínan to touch*, with its compounds; likewise

(1) Hence "hic thee home," and the like.

(2) O. "I fear me."

wesan *to be*, when implying possession, govern the dative or genitive; as,

Ætla weóld Hunum *Attila ruled the Huns.*

þe on þám dagum ge-weóld cyne-dómes who in those days ruled the kingdom.

On-fóh þissum fulle receive this cup.

þá on-fengon híg þæs feos then took they the money.

He miltsad úrum gyltum *he hath compassion on our sins.*

Ge-miltsa míن *have pity on me.*

Hwý hlyste ge him? *why listen ye to him?*

Hlyste he gódes rædes *let him listen to good counsel.*

He him helpan ne mæg *he cannot help him.*

Ge-help þú earmra manna *help thou poor men.*

For-þám-þe þú ne ge-lýfdest mínum wordum *because thou believedst not my words.*

We ne sculon þæs ge-lýfan *we must not believe that.*

Iulianus his Cristen-dóme wið-sóc *Julian denied his Christianity.*

þry-wa þú wið-sæcst mín thrice thou shalt deny me.

Secg weorce ge-féh *the warrior rejoiced in the work.*

Cwen weorces ge-feáh *the queen was glad of the work.*

Ne him hrínan ne mehte fær-grípe flódes nor might the sudden gripe of the flood touch him.

pá æt-hráñ he hyra eágéna *then touched he their eyes.*

pá him wæs manna þearf<sup>(1)</sup> since *he had need of men.*

pá þing þe þæs Caseres synd *the things that are the Caesar's.*

Verbs of desiring, needing, tempting, wondering at, using, enjoying, \*remembering, \*forgetting, caring for, ceasing from; together with cepan *to take, keep, &c.*, wénan *to hope for*, \*neósiān *to visit*. on-byrian *to taste*, éhtian or éhtan *to persecute*, oð-sacan *to deny*, earnian *to earn, deserve*, gilpan *to boast of*, fægnian *to rejoice at*, \*on-drædan *to dread*; likewise bídian (*bídan*) *to bide, wait for*, with its compounds, govern the genitive; as,

We ge-wilniad fríðes wið eów we desire peace with you.

þæs ic wilnige and wisce *that I desire and wish.*

pæt mæden gyrnde deádes the maiden yearned for death.

Ne be-purfon læces þa þe hale synd they need not a leech that are whole.

U're man-dryhten mægenes be-hófað our liege lord requires strength.

Hwý fandige ge míñ? why tempt ye me?

For-þón ic his cost node therefore I tempted him.

We wundriad þæs wlítan þæré sunnan we wonder at the beauty of the sun.

(1) L. illi hominum opus erat

Eówre fýnd wafiad eówer your foes shall be amazed at you.

Brúc þisses beágas, and þisses hrægles neót enjoy this ring, and use this dress.

Ne ge-mune ic nánra his synna I will remember none of his sins.

Ne ge ne ge-þencad þára fíf hláfa? and do ye not remember the five loaves?

Pú hæfst þára wæpna for-giten thou hast forgotten the weapons.

Hí þæs ne gýmdon they cared not for that.

Feores hí ne róhton for life they recked not.

Héddon here-reáfes they heeded the war-spoil.

Ge-swíc þínes wópes cease thy weeping.

Sceolde aðeling ealdres linnan<sup>(1)</sup> the noble must part from life.

Hí nánre bricge ne cepton they kept to no bridge.

He nolde nánes fleámes cepan he would not take to flight.

Ne þearf ic sénigre áre wénan I may not hope for any honour.

Ge-wát þá neósian heán húses (he) then departed to visit the lofty mansion.

On-byrigē metes<sup>(2)</sup> let him taste meat.

Paulus ehte Cristenra manna Paul persecuted Christian men.

Hwá od-sæcd þæs? who denies that?

Seó þeód þe his earnað the people that deserveth it.

(1) Linnan sometimes has a dative.

(2) We say also "taste of—."

Hú ne gilpst þú þonne heora fægeres? (3) *boastest thou not then of their fairness?*

Ne sceal he fægnian þæs folces worda *he must not rejoice at the people's words.*

Híg on-dredon þæra Israhela tó-cymes *they dreaded the coming of the Israelites.*

Se hýr-man his ed-leánes an-bídad *the hireling awaiteth his reward.*

Verbs of granting, likewise tilian *to till, get, for-*  
*wyrnan to deny, þancian to thank, stýrian (stýran)*  
*to chastise, have a dative of the person or near object,*  
*and a genitive of the thing or far object; as,*

Se hálga him þæs ge-úðe *the saint granted him that.*

þá þúhte me hefig-tyme þe þæs tó tidienne  
*then it seemed to me troublesome to grant thee that.*

þá Metod on-láh Medium and Persum aldor-  
*dómes when the Lord bestowed the supremacy on the Medes and Persians.*

þá Noe on-gan him ætes tilian *then Noah began to get him food.*

þe him ne for-wyrnde cyne-líces weordscipes  
*who denied him not kingly honour.*

Apollonius hire þæs þancode *Apollonius thanked her for that.*

He him þæs þinges stýrede *he chastised him for that thing.*

Verbs of depriving, likewise teón &c. *to accuse,*

(3) neuter adjective used and declined as a noun.

have an accusative of the near object, and an ablative or genitive of the far object; as,

*Nelle ic þa rincas rihte be-náman I will not deprive the warriors of their right.*

*Heó hit ne mæg his ge-wittes be-reáfian she cannot bereave it of its understanding.*

*Dyrnum ge-þingum be-togen charged with secret practices.*

*Hwý týhd ús úre hláf-ord swá micles falsoes? why doth our lord accuse us of so great deceit?*

Biddan to ask for, has an accusative of the near, and a genitive of the far object; as

*Gif his sunu hine bitt hláfes if his son asketh him for bread.*

Some impersonal verbs govern the person affected in the accusative or dative: hit is often left out; as,

*Hyngrað hine (¹) he is hungry.*

*Seð swefen þe hine mætte the dream that he dreamed.*

*Hire ge-býrað it becometh her.*

*Hit licode Herode it pleased Herod.*

*Him þúhte it seemed to him (lit. him thought).*

*Ne ge-weard ð unc wið sénne pening? did we not agree for a penny?*

Others have beside a genitive of the far object, after rules for other verbs; as,

*þone weligan lyst an-wealdes the rich lusteth for power.*

*Nænne mon þæs ne tweóð no man doubts of that.*

(¹) Comp. G. es hungert ihn; es ge böhrt ihr; ihm dünktet.

þe nánre be-hreowsunge ne be-hófað thou needest no repentance.

Him þæs ne sceamode of that they were not ashamed.

### V.—Syntax of Prepositions.

Prepositions, as in German, &c., require various oblique cases of the nouns before which they are placed; thus,

geond	through, throughout	ymb(-e)( <sup>3</sup> )	{ round,
þurh( <sup>4</sup> )	through	ymb-útan	{ about.
wid-æftan	behind		

govern the accusative; as,

Gá geond wegas and hegas go through the ways and hedges.

þurh his micle ge-þyld through his great patience.

Wid-æftan þá burh behind the town.

Ymb þæs cyninges slege about the slaying of the king.

Ymb-útan þone weall around the wall.

The following govern the dative

be (bi, big) ( <sup>4</sup> ) of, about, by	in-tó into
of off, from, of	á-r ere, before
fram from, by	feor far from
æt at, to	un-feor( <sup>5</sup> ) near
tó to	neah (nean) nigh

(<sup>3</sup>) G. durch.

(<sup>3</sup>) Comp. ámuþ, L. amb-, G. um.

(<sup>4</sup>) Comp. i-wi, G. bei; á-r-e, L. ab, D. af, G. ab-; L. ad; G. zu, &c.

(<sup>5</sup>) Lit. un-far; G. un-fern.

ge-hende near, handy	tō-middles	} amid
æfter after	on-middan	
búfan } above	binnan <sup>(2)</sup>	} within, op-úfan } be-æftan (bæftan) } abafit, on- } innan } inside
be-hindan } behind	wid-	
be-heonan on this side	tō- }-foran before	} foran before
bútan <sup>(1)</sup> without, outside	tō- }-weard toward	
be-twynan between	tō-eácan besides.	
tō-emnes along		

Be þám heáh-fædere concerning the patriarch.

Be mínes fæder leáfe by my father's leave.

Far of þínum lande depart from thy country.

Of ánre úp-flóran off an upper floor.

Æt þám burnan<sup>(3)</sup> at the brook.

Fram cild-háde from childhood.

Gá tó þínum húse go to thy house.

Þá híg in-tó þére byrgene eódon then they went into the tomb.

Ær sunnan setl-gange before the setting of the sun.

He wæs him feor he was far from him.

Un-seor þám húse near the house.

Neah þám forda nigh the ford.

Ge-hende þére ceastré near the town.

Æster þám ge-feohte after the fight.

Búfan þére heofenan above the heaven.

Bæftan þére mænigeo behind the multitude.

Be-heonan þére stráte on this side the street.

(1) D. buiten, O. boat, but.

(2) G. binnen, S. ben.

(3) S. bura.

Hí comon ofer þá sē *they came over the sea.*

Micel man-cwealm be-com ofer þære Roman-iscre leóde *a great plague came upon the Roman people.*

Under þære fæstnesse *under the firmament.*

Wid-útan his dóm-ern *outside his judgment-hall.*

Wid-útan þám díce *without the ditch.*

Tó-geanes his fýnd he gæd hegoeth *against his foes.*

Hí þá ferdon tó-geanes þám hæðenum *they then marched against the heathen.*

Feohtende on-gean hine *fighting against him.*

Þá com him þær on-gean *then came there to meet him.*

Be-geondan Iordanem *beyond Jordan.*

Be-geondan þám mere *beyond the lake.*

For *for, and mid(¹) with,* govern the accusative, ablative, or dative ; as,

For eall Cristen folc ge-biddan *to pray for all Christian people.*

For þý máne *for that crime.*

For hwylcum intingan ? *for what cause?*

Mid þá fore-sprecenan fæmnan(²) *with the fore-said damsel.*

Mid þý áðe *with the oath.*

Mid his ágenum life *with his own life.*

Wid *against, with, &c. governs the accusative, dative, or genitive ; as,*

Wid þá reádan sē *by the Red Sea.*

Wid þín folc *toward thy people.*

þa assan wid hí læswodon *the asses were grazing with them.*

(¹) Comp. G. für ; μέτρα, G. mid.

(²) L. feminis.

A'na wið eallum *alone against all.*

Eáge wið eágan, tóð wið téð *eye for eye, tooth for tooth.*

Wið þæs holtes(1) *toward the wood.*

He éfste wið þæs heres *he hastened against the army.*

A preposition sometimes stands after its case; as,

Hí him mid séton *they sat with him.*

Him bi twegen bémás stódon *by him stood two trees.*

It is sometimes parted from it altogether, and placed either next before the verb, or last of all; as,

þe he man-cyn mid a-lýsde *with which he redeemed mankind*

þá ge-nea-læhte him án man tó *then drew nigh to him a man.*

Ymb-útan is sometimes divided; as,

Ymb han-cred útan *about cock-crow.*

Wið and weard are sometimes used, the one before, the other after an accusative or genitive; as,

Wið heofonas weard(2) *toward the heavens.*

Wið Petres weard *toward Peter.*

## VI.—*Syntax of Conjunctions.*

The following conjunctions require the verb to be in the indicative mode:

and (3) *and.*

eác eke, *also.*

(1) P. holt, G. holtz.

(2) Comp. the use of L. ad—versus.

(3) Comp. G. und, auch, so, da, dann, deam, da—da, &c.

ac but	oddē—	either
swá, swá-swá so, as	ððer-twega—	
swá—swá so—as	ððer-pára—	—or
pá {then	ge—	as well—as
ponne } (for-)hwý why?	wéðder-ge, } ge	both—and
pá {when, as	náðer-ne—ne	neither—nor
pá-pá } (mid-)hwý(-þe) (?)	swá-peáh	yet,
mid-pám(-þe)	(peáh-)hwædere	nevertheless
penden while	ná-læs—ac	not only—but
síð-pán since	(for-)hwý(-þe)	for, because,
	for-pám(-þe)	therefore.

The following require the subjunctive, though in general, as in Latin, in subordinate prepositions only:

pæt, pæt-te (⁸) that	od(-pæt) until
peáh(-þe) though	pá-hwíle(-þe)(⁹) (the) while
swylce as if	ær {ere,
ponne {when	ær-pám(-þe) } before
hwænne }	hwæðer(-þe)(?) {whether
hwær {where	sam—sam } (—or)
hwar }	gif (⁹) if
hwý-læs(-þe) lest	nemne {unless
tó-hón-pæt in order that	nymðe }
⁹-hwý—þe so much the—as	hú, hú-meta how.

(⁸) The particle þe is added or not at pleasure to several conjunctions.

(⁹) G. dass, D. dat; G. doch, wann, wenn, &c.

(⁹) Hwíl is a noun, (II. 3.) while, time; G. weile.—

(⁹) Answering to wortpoy—þ, L. utrum—a n; like these hwæðer is properly a neuter pronoun.

(⁹) The conjunction gif has no more to do with the verb gifa n than S. gin has with given, or O. an with unna n.

Hwæt dō ic þæt ic éce lif áge? *whnt shall I do  
that I may possess eternal life?*

Ic wát þæt hit býð sáwl and líc-homa *I know  
that it is soul and body.*

þeáh-þe ic sceal ealle wucan fæstan *though I  
shall fast all the week.*

Swylce þú hí ge-sceópe *as if thou hadst created  
them.*

þý-læs þú þinne fót æt stáne æt-sporne *lest  
thou dash thy foot against a stone.*

Tó-þón-þæt he his ríce ge-brædde *in order that  
he might extend his empire.*

A'-þý un-weordra þe hine manige men for-  
séon so much the unworthier because many men despise  
him.

Od-þæt þú cume tó þám fyrimestan *till thou come  
to the first.*

Od-þæt se A-lýsend com *until the Redeemer came.*  
þá-hwile-þe ge leóht habban *while ye have  
light.*

þá-hwile-þe he on life býð while he is a-live.

Ær-þám-þe se hana tuwa cráwe *before the cock  
crow twice.*

Ær-þám-þe ge hine biddad *before ye ask him.*  
þonne þú þe ge-bidde *when thou prayest.*  
þonne he hám cymð *when he cometh home.*  
Sege ús hwænne þás þing ge-weordon *tell us  
when these things shall come to pass.*

cwædon tō him: Nú þine leorning-cnihtas dōd þæt him a-lýfed<sup>(1)</sup> nis reste-dagum tō dóinne.

3. And he cwæd tō him: Ne rædde<sup>(2)</sup> ge hwæt Dauid dyde þá hine hyngrede, and þa þe mid him wæreron,

4. Hú he in-eóde on Godes hús, and æt þa offring-hláfas<sup>(3)</sup> þe næron him a-lýfede tō etanne, búton þám sacer-lum<sup>(4)</sup> ánum?

5. Odde ne rædde ge on þære á, þæt þa sacerdas on reste-dagum on þám temple<sup>(5)</sup> ge-wemmad<sup>(6)</sup> þone reste-dæg, and synd búton leahtr<sup>(7)</sup>?

6. Ic sege sód-líce eów þæt þes<sup>(8)</sup> is mærra<sup>(9)</sup> þonne þæt templ.

7. Gif ge sód-líce wistou hwæt is: Ic wille mild-heortnesse and ná on-sægdnesse<sup>(10)</sup>, ne ge-nidrode ge næfre un-scyldige.

8. Sód-líce mannes sunu is eác reste-dæges hláf-ord<sup>(11)</sup>.

9. Jú se Hælend þanon fór, he com in-tó heora gesomnunge<sup>(12)</sup>:

10. Jú wæs þær án man se hæfde for-scruncene<sup>(13)</sup>

(1) A-lýfan (I. 2.) *to allow*; G. er-lauben. (2) Rádan (I. 2.) *to read*.

(3) Loaves of offering, show-bread; offspring II. 3. hláf II. 2.

(4) Sacerd (II. 2.) *priest*. L. sacerdos. (5) Templ (III. 1.) *temple*.

(6) Ge-wemman (I. 2.) *to pollute, profane*.

(7) Leahter (II. 2.) *crime, sin*

(8) This man.

(9) Mæra (L.) *great, famous*.

(10) On-sægdnes (II. 3.) *sacrifice*; on-secgan to offer.

(11) II. 2. *lord*; said to be from hláf bread, loaf, and ord beginning, origin; that is, giver of bread. (12) *Assembly, synagogue*; G. ver-sammlung.

(13) For-scrincan (III. 1.) *to shrink up, wither away*: mark the intensive force of fór-.

hand. And híg ácsodon hine, þus cweðende : Is hit a-lýfed tó hælanne on reste-dagum ? þæt híg wrégdou<sup>(1)</sup> hine.

| 11. He sæde him sóð-líce : Hwylc man is of eów,  
þe hæbbe án sceáp, and gif hit a-fyldreste-dagum on  
þyt<sup>(2)</sup>, hú ne nimð he þæt, and hefð hit úp?

12. Witod-líce<sup>(3)</sup> micle má man is sceápe betera<sup>(4)</sup> ;  
witod-líce hit is a-lýfed on reste-dagum wel tó dónue.

13. Þá cweð he tó þám men : A-þena<sup>(5)</sup> þíne hand.  
And he hí a-þenede ; and heó wæs hál ge-worden swá  
seó óðer.

---

## II.—S. Mark, vi. 32.

32. And on scip<sup>(6)</sup> stígende, híg fóron on-sundron on  
wéste<sup>(7)</sup> stówe<sup>(8)</sup>.

33. And ge-sáwon híg farende, and híg ge-cneowor  
manega, and gangende of þám burgum<sup>(9)</sup>, þider urnon  
and him be-foran comon.

34. And þá se Hælend þanon eóde, he ge-seáh micle  
mænigeo, and he ge-miltsode him, for-þám-þe híg

(<sup>1</sup>) Wrégan (I. 2.) *to accuse, be-wray.*

(<sup>2</sup>) II. 2. pit, hole; D. put, L. put-eus.

(<sup>3</sup>) Verily, truly, for, but, therefore; a common expletive: from witian (L. 1.) *to decide.*

(<sup>4</sup>) Vulgate: “Quantò-magis melior.”

(<sup>5</sup>) A-þenian (I. 1.) *to stretch out.*

(<sup>6</sup>) Comp. ἔκση, G. schiff, D. schip; hence also skiff.

(<sup>7</sup>) Wéste (I.) waste, desert; G. wüst, D. woest.

(<sup>8</sup>) Hence slow in local names, and *to slow, be-slow.*

(<sup>9</sup>) Burh (p. 19—20), G. burg (*πύργος*) a (*fortified*) town, burgh.

wærón swa-swá scép<sup>(1)</sup> þe nænné hyrde nabbað ; and he on-gan híg fela láeran<sup>(2)</sup>.

35. And þá hit micel ylding<sup>(3)</sup> wæs, his leorning-enihtas him tó comon and cwædon :

36. Þeos stów is wéstē, and tíma is forð-a-gán<sup>(4)</sup> ; for-læt þás mænigco, þæt híg faron on ge-hende túnas<sup>(5)</sup>, and him mete bycgon þæt híg eton<sup>(6)</sup>.

37. Þá cwæd he : Sylle<sup>(7)</sup> ge him etan. Þá cwædon híg : Uton gán, and mid twám hundred penigum<sup>(8)</sup> hláfas bycgan, and we him etan syllad.

38. Þá cwæd he . Hú fela hláfa<sup>(9)</sup> habbe ge ? gáð and lóciad<sup>(10)</sup>. And þá híg wiston híg cwædon : Fif hláfas and twegen fixas.

39. And þá be-beád<sup>(11)</sup> se Hælend þæt þæt folc sáte ofer þæt gréne hig<sup>(12)</sup>.

40. And híg þá sáeton, hundredum<sup>(13)</sup> and fístigum.

41. And fíf hláfum and twám fixum on-fangenum<sup>(14)</sup>, he on heofon locode, and híg bletsode ; and þa hláfas bræc, and sealde his leorning-cnihtum þæt híg tó-foran him a-setton ; and twegen fixas him eallum dælde<sup>(15)</sup>.

(1) Two accusatives as with L. doceo.

(2) Lateness, delay ; from eald.

(3) For sceúp . see p. 5.

(4) Gone forth ; " far passed."

(5) Tún (II. 2.) village, town : originally enclosure, farm : comp. G. saun hedge ; D. tuin garden.

(6) Comp. éðer, L. edere.

(7) Syllan (I. 3.) to give, sell.

(8) Penig (pening) (II. 2.) G. piwanig.

(9) Gen : see p. 32.

(10) Lóciān (I. 1.) to look.

(11) Be-beódan (III. 3.) to command.

(12) II. 1. hay ; G. heu. Vulg. " super viride fenum."

(13) By hundreds, &c.

(14) Abl. or dat. absolute, p. 75.

(15) Délan (I. 2.) to deal, divide, distribute ; G. theilen, D. deelen.

42. And híg æton þá ealle, and ge-fyllede wurdon.
43. And híg namon þéra hláfa and fixa láfa<sup>(1)</sup>, twelf wilian<sup>(2)</sup> fulle.
44. Sóð-líce fíf þúsend manna þéra etendra wéron.
45. Þá sona he nýdde<sup>(3)</sup> his leorning-cnihtas on scip stígan, þæt híg him be-foran fór on bone múðan<sup>(4)</sup> tó Bethsaida, oð he þæt folc for-lete<sup>(5)</sup>.
46. And þá he híg for-let, he ferde<sup>(6)</sup> on bone munt<sup>(7)</sup>, and hine ána þar<sup>(8)</sup> ge-bæd<sup>(9)</sup>.
47. And þá æfen<sup>(10)</sup> wæs, þæt scip wæs on middre sér, and he ána wæs on lande.
48. And he ge-seáh híg on réwette<sup>(11)</sup> swincende<sup>(12)</sup>; him wæs wiðer-weard<sup>(13)</sup> wind<sup>(14)</sup>: and on niht, ymbe þá feordan wæccan<sup>(15)</sup>, he com tó him ofer þá sé gangende, and wolde híg for-búgan<sup>(16)</sup>.
49. Þá híg hine ge-sáwon ofer þá sé gangende, híg wéndon þæt hit un-fále<sup>(17)</sup> gást<sup>(18)</sup> wére, and híg clypedon;

(1) Láf(II. 3.) *leaving, remnant*; lífan (I. 2.) *to leave*; lás:re:iv.

(2) Wilia (I. 2.) *basket*. (3) Nýdan (I. 2.) *to compel*; from neód.

(4) Múða (I. 2.) *mouth of a river*; here *lake*; Vulg. "fretum."

(5) For-lætan (II. 2.) *to forsake, abandon*, (G. ver-lassen, D. ver-laaten), send away. (6) Feran (I. 2.) *to go*.

(7) II. 2. mount: we have "a mountain."

(8) Ðar=þær, þara. (9) Ge-biddan (II. 1. reflect.) *to prey*.

(10) Æfen (II. 2.) *even*, G. abend: -ung (II. 3.) *evening*.

(11) Réwet (II. 2.) *rowing*; rówan (II. 2.) *to row*; D. roeijen.

(12) Swincan (III. 1.) *to labour*; O. swink.

(13) Adverse, way-ward; G. wider-wärtig.

(14) II. 2. G. & D. wind; L. vent-us.

(15) Wæcco (I. 3.) *watch*. (16) III. 3. *avoid, pass by*.

(17) Unclean; séile pure, faithful: fél-á-ian to purify.

(18) Comp. G. geist, D. geest, S. ghaist.

50. Híg ealle hine ge-sáwon, and wurdon ge-dréfede<sup>(1)</sup>. And sona he spræc tó him, and cwæd : Ge-lýfad ; ic hit eom<sup>(2)</sup> ; nelle ge<sup>(3)</sup> eów on-drædan.

51. And he on scip tó him eóde ; and se wind ge-swác<sup>(4)</sup> ; and híg þæs þe má<sup>(5)</sup> be-tweox him wundredon.

52. Ne on-geaton<sup>(6)</sup> híg be þám hláfum ; sóð-líce heora heorte wæs a-blend<sup>(7)</sup>.

53. And þá híg ofer-seglodon, híg comon tó Genesaret and þar wícedon<sup>(8)</sup>.

54. And þá híg of scipe eódon, sona híg hine ge-cneówon ;

55. And eal þæt ríce be-farende<sup>(9)</sup>, híg on sœccingum<sup>(10)</sup> bæron þa un-truman<sup>(11)</sup>, þar híg hine ge-hýrdon.

56. And swá-hwar-swá he on wíc<sup>(12)</sup> odðe on túnas eóde, on stráeton<sup>(13)</sup> híg þa un-truman ledon, and hine bædon þæt híg huru<sup>(14)</sup> his reáses fnæd<sup>(15)</sup> æt-hrinon<sup>(16)</sup>. And swá fela swá hine æt-hrinon, híg wurdon hále.

(1) Drefan (I. 2.) *to trouble, offend.*

(2) Comp. G. ich bin es.

(3) L. nolite.

(4) Ge-swican (III. 2.) *to cease.*

(5) So much the more ; G. des-to mehr.

(6) On-gitan (II. 1.) *to understand.*

(7) A-blendan (I. 2.) *to blind ; blind blind.*

(8) Wíician (I. 1.) *to dwell : see wíc below.*

(9) Be-faran=be-feran, p. 55. (10) Sœccing (II. 3.) *sacking, bed.*

(11) Diseased, infirm ; trum firm.

(12) Wíc (II. 1.) *dwelling, village ; L. vic-us : hence wick and wick in local names ; D. wijk.* (13) Strát (II. 3.) *street ; G. strasse, D. straat.*

(14) At least, at all events.

(15) Hem.

(16) Æt-hrinan (III. 3.) *to touch.*

III.—*S. Luke*, xx. 9—25.

9. He on-gan þá þis big-spel<sup>(1)</sup> tó þám folce cwedian :  
Sum man plantode<sup>(2)</sup> him wín-geard<sup>(3)</sup>, and hine gesette<sup>(4)</sup> mid tilium<sup>(5)</sup>, and he wæs him feor manegum tídum<sup>(6)</sup>.

10. Þá on tide he sende his þeów tó þám tilium, þæt hig him sealdou of þæs wín-geardes wæstme ; þú swung-on<sup>(7)</sup> hig þone and ídelne<sup>(8)</sup> hine for-leton.

11. Þá sende he óðerne þeów ; þá beúton hig þone, and mid teónum<sup>(9)</sup> ge-wécende<sup>(10)</sup> hine for-leton ídeine.

12. Þá sende he þryddan ; þá wurpon hig út þone ge-wundodne<sup>(11)</sup>.

13. Þá cwaed þæs wín-geardes hláf-ord : Hwæt dō ic ? ic a-sende míinne leófan sunu ; wénunga<sup>(12)</sup> hine hig for-wandiað<sup>(13)</sup> þonne hig hine ge-seóð.

(1) *Parable* · see p. 73. *Spel* (II. 1.) *story, tale* ; hence *spell*.

(2) *Plantian* (I. 1.) *to plant*.

(3) *Vine-yard* ; D. *wijn-gaard* : *geard* or *erd* (II. 2.) *yard, (garden), inclosure, dwelling, country*.

(4) *Ge-settan* (I. 2.) *to furnish, people* : perhaps a mis-translation of Vulg. “locavit ;” we read “let it forth.”

(5) *Tilia* (I. 2.) *tiller, husbandman*.

(6) *Tid* (II. 3.) *time, tide, season* ; G. *zeit*, D. *tijd*. *For a long time, many seasons*, Vulg. “multis temporibus.”

(7) *Swingan* (III. 1.) *to beat, swinge*.

(8) *I'del* (I. 1.) *empty, idle, vain* ; G. *eitel*, D. *ijdel*.

(9) *Teóna* (I. 2.) *injury, wrong*.

(10) *Ge-wécan* (I. 2.) *to weaken, injure* : *wéo* (G. *weich*) *weak*.

(11) *Wandian* (I. 1.) *to wound* : *wund* (II. 2.) *wound*.

(12) *Perhæps* : *wénan to ween, hope, expect* ; G. *wähnen to fancy, &c.*

(13) *For-wandian* (I. 1.) *to respect, reverence*.

14. þá hine þa tilian ge-sáwon, híg þóhton be-tweox him, and cwádon : Her is se yrfe-weard<sup>(1)</sup>; cumad, utoñ hine of-sleán<sup>(2)</sup>, þæt seó ráht<sup>(3)</sup> úre sý.

15. And híg hine of þám wín-gearde a-wurpon<sup>(4)</sup> of-slegene. Hwæt déð þæs wín-geardes hláford?

16. He cymd and for-spild þa tilian, and sylð þone wín-geard óðrum. Híg cwádon þá hig þis ge-hýrdon. Þæt ne ge-weorðe.

17. þá be-heold he híg, and cwæd : Hwæt is þæt a-writen is, þone stán<sup>(5)</sup> þe þa wyrhtan a-wurpon, þes is ge-worden on þære hyrnán<sup>(6)</sup> heáfod<sup>(7)</sup>?

18. Ælc þe fylð ofer þone stán býð for-brytt<sup>(8)</sup>; ofer þone þe he fylð, he to-cwyst<sup>(9)</sup>.

19. þá sóhton þéra sacerda ealdras<sup>(10)</sup> and þa bóc-eras<sup>(11)</sup> hyra handa on þære tide on hine wurpan<sup>(12)</sup>; and híg on-dredon him þæt folc : sóð-líce híg on-geton þæt he þis big-spel tó him cwæd.

(<sup>1</sup>) *Heir*; *yrfe* (I. 3.) *inheritance* (G. *erb-schaft*) · *weard* (II. 2.) *keeper*, *ward-en*, &c.

(<sup>2</sup>) *Sleán* (II. 3.) *to strike, beat, slay*; *of-sleán* *to kill outright*. *of-* in composition often strengthens the sense or makes it bad.

(<sup>3</sup>) *Æ'hht* (II. 3.) *possession*; from ágan.

(<sup>4</sup>) *A-weorpan* (III. 1.) *to cast out, reject*.

(<sup>5</sup>) Comp. G. *stein*, D. *steen*, S. *stane*.

(<sup>6</sup>) *Hyrne* (I. 3.) *corner*.

(<sup>7</sup>) *Heáfod* (III. 1.) *head*; G. *haupt*, D. *hoofd*.

(<sup>8</sup>) *For-bryttan* (I. 2.) *to break, shatter*: Vulg. “conquassabitur.”

(<sup>9</sup>) *To-cwysan* (I. 2.) *to crush, squeeze to pieces*; G. *quetschen*. With *s-**squeeze*, comp. *bar*, *s-par*; *melt*, *s-melt*; *tumble*, *s-tumble*, &c. &c.

(<sup>10</sup>) *Chief(s of the) priests*.

(<sup>11</sup>) *Bócere* (II. 2.) *book-man, learned man, scribe, lawyer*.

(<sup>12</sup>) Or *worpan*; see p. 5.

20. þá sendon híg mid searwum<sup>(1)</sup> þa þe híg riht-wíse leton<sup>(2)</sup>, þæt híg hine ge-scyldigodon<sup>(3)</sup>, and þæt híg hine ge-sealdon þám ealdron<sup>(4)</sup> tó dóme<sup>(5)</sup>, and tó þæs déman<sup>(6)</sup> an-wealde<sup>(7)</sup> tó for-démanne<sup>(8)</sup>.

21. þá ácsodon híg hine, and cwádon: Láreow, we witon þæt þú rihte spricst and láerst, and for nánum men ne wandast<sup>(9)</sup>, ac Godes weg on sóð-fæstnisse láerst:

22. Is hit riht þæt man þám Casere<sup>(10)</sup> gafol<sup>(11)</sup> sylle, þe<sup>(12)</sup> ná?

23. þá cwæd he tó him þá he heora fácen<sup>(13)</sup> on-get<sup>(14)</sup>: Hwý fandige<sup>(15)</sup> ge mín?

24. Y'wad<sup>(16)</sup> me áanne pening. Hwæs an-líknesse<sup>(17)</sup>

(<sup>1</sup>) Searu (III. 1.) *ambush, strategem.*

(<sup>2</sup>) *Who might feign themselves righteous men.*

(<sup>3</sup>) Ge-scyldigan (-ian, see p. 41) (I. 1.) *to accuse; G. be-schuldigen.*  
Seyld (II. 3.) (G. schuld) *debt, guilt.*

(<sup>4</sup>) *Deliver him to the chief priests: Vulg. "traderent illum principatui."*

(<sup>5</sup>) Dóm (II. 2.) *doom, judgment, power, &c.*

(<sup>6</sup>) Déma (I. 2.) *Judge, doomer, deemer; hence doemster (démostro) properly feminine; see p. 66.*

(<sup>7</sup>) An-weald (II. 2.) *power; G. go-walt, fem. another exception to the general rule.*

(<sup>8</sup>) Déman (I. 2.) *to judge, for-déman to condemn: comp. επινείν, καρα-επινείν; G. urtheilen, ver-urtheilen.*

(<sup>9</sup>) The for in for-wandian, is the preposition, not the prefix; the latter is inseparable: see p. 73.

(<sup>10</sup>) Casere (II. 2.) *Cæsar, Emperor; G. kaiser.*

(<sup>11</sup>) *Tribute, gavel; F. gabelle.*

(<sup>12</sup>) Or; seldom used independently, but often affixed to other conjunctions: see p. 93. (<sup>13</sup>) III. 1. *deceit, fraud.*

(<sup>14</sup>) For on-geat; see p. 5.

(<sup>15</sup>) Fandian (I. 1.) *to tempt.*

(<sup>16</sup>) Y'wian (éowian) (I. 1.) *to show.*

(<sup>17</sup>) An-líknes (II. 3.) *likeness, image.*

hæfð he, and ofer-ge-writ<sup>(1)</sup>? þá cwædon híg: þæs Caseres.

25. þá cwæd he tó him: A-gifad<sup>(2)</sup> þám Casere þa þing þe þæs Caseres synd, and Gode þa þing þe Godes synd.

---

IV.—*S. John vii. 14—28.*

14. þá hit wæs mid-dæg þæs freols-dæges<sup>(3)</sup>, þá eóde se Hælend in-tó þám temple, and lærde.

15. And þa Iudeas wundredon and cwædon: Húmeta can þes stafas, þonne he ne leornode<sup>(4)</sup>?

16. Se Hælend him and-swarode<sup>(5)</sup> and cwæd: Mín lár nis ná mín, ac þæs þe me sende.

17. Gif hwá<sup>(6)</sup> wile his willan dóن, he ge-cnæwd be þære láre hwæder heó sig of Gode, hwæder-þe ic be me sylfum spece.

18. Se-þe be him sylfum spicð sécd his ágen wuld-or<sup>(7)</sup>; se-þe sécd þæs wuldor þe hine sende, se is sóð-fæst<sup>(8)</sup>, and nis nán un-riht-wísnes on him.

19. Hú ne sealde Moises eów á, and eówer nán ne healt þá á? Hwý séce ge me tó of-sleánne?

(1) III. 1. *super-scriptio*.

(2) A-gifan (II. 1.) *to render, restore, give back*.

(3) Freols (II. 2.) *feast, festival*.

(4) Leornian (I. 1.) *to learn*; G. *lernen*.

(5) And-swarian (I. 1.) *to answer, governing the dative*.

(6) If any one; comp. L. *si quis*. (7) Wuldor (-er) (II. 2.) *glory*.

(8) Sooth-fast, truthful, just; fast forms the second part of severa compound adjectives.

20. *þá and-swarode seó mænio and cwæd:* Deófol  
þe sticad on<sup>(1)</sup>; hwá sécd þe tó of-sleánne?

21. *þá and-swarode se Hælend, and cwæd tó him:*  
án weorc ic worhte, and ealle ge wundrið.

22. *For-þý Moises eów sealde ymb-snidenesse<sup>(2)</sup>;*  
(næs<sup>(3)</sup> ná for-þýg-þe heó of Moises sý, ac of fæderon<sup>(4)</sup>);

23. *And on reste-dæge ge ymb-sníðad man þæt*  
Moises á ne sý to-worpen<sup>(5)</sup>; and ge belgað<sup>(6)</sup> wið me  
for-þám-þe ic ge-hælde sénne man on reste-dæg.

24. *Ne déme ge be an-sýne<sup>(7)</sup>, ac démað rihtne dóm.*

25. *Sume cwædon, þa þe wéron of Ierusalem: Hú*  
nis þes se þe híg sécad tó of-sleánne?

26. *And nú he spicd open-líce<sup>(8)</sup>, and híg ne cwedað*  
nán ping tó him. *Cwede we<sup>(9)</sup> hwæder þa ealdras on-*  
*giton þæt þes is Crist?*

27. *Ac we witon hwanon þes is: þonne Crist cymd,*  
*þonne nát nán man hwanon he býð.*

28. *Se Hælend clypode and lærde on þám temple,*  
*and cwæd: Me ge cunnon<sup>(10)</sup>), and ge witon hwanon ic*

(<sup>1</sup>) On-stician (I. 1.) *to prick, urge on.*

(<sup>2</sup>) Ymb-snidenesse (II. 3.) *circum-cision; ymb-sníðan* (III. 2.) *to cir-*  
*cum-cise; part. p. -sniden.*

(<sup>3</sup>) Næs (nas) *not; usually joined with ná.*

(<sup>4</sup>) For fiederum; see p. 12.

(<sup>5</sup>) To-weorpan (III. 1.) *to over-throw, cast down, destroy; L. dis-jicere,*  
G. zer-warfen. (<sup>6</sup>) Belgan (III. 1.) *to be angry.*

(<sup>7</sup>) An-sýn (II. 3.) *countenance, appearance.*

(<sup>8</sup>) Open (II.) *open; G. offen, D. open.*

(<sup>9</sup>) See pp. 95—6.

(<sup>10</sup>) Observe the distinction between cunnan and wítan (p. 61, note 7);  
me ye know, and ye wot whence I am.

eom : and ic ne com fram me sylfum, ac se is sóð þe me  
sende, þone ge ne cunnon.

V.—*Genesis*, ch. xlvi.<sup>(1)</sup>

1. Þá ne mihte Iosep hine leng dyrnan<sup>(2)</sup>, ac he drát  
ealle þa Egipiscan út, þæt nán freinde<sup>(3)</sup> man be-twix  
him nære ;
2. And he weóp, and clypode hlúdre<sup>(4)</sup> stefne, and  
þa Egipiscan ge-hýrdon, and eal Pharaones hired<sup>(5)</sup> ;
3. And he cwæd tó his ge-bródrum : Ic eom Iosep ;  
lysad úre fæder nú git? Þá ne mihton his ge-bródrum  
him for ege<sup>(6)</sup> ge-and-wyrdan<sup>(7)</sup>.
4. Þá grétte<sup>(8)</sup> he híg ár-wurð-líce<sup>(9)</sup>, and cwæd :  
Ic eom Iosep eower bróðor, þe ge sealdon on Egyp-  
ta-land<sup>(10)</sup>.
5. Ne on-dræde ge eów nán þing, ne eów ne of-  
þince<sup>(11)</sup> þæt ge me sealdon on þis ríce ; sóð-líce for-  
eowre þearfe me sende God on Egyp-ta-land.

(<sup>1</sup>) This and the following chapter are taken with some alterations from Thwaites's *Heptateuchus*.

(<sup>2</sup>) *To hide* (I. 2.); *dyrne* (I.) *dark*.

(<sup>3</sup>) *Fremed, fremd* (I.) *strange, foreign*; G. *fremd*.

(<sup>4</sup>) *Hlúd* (I.) *loud*; G. *laut*, D. *luid*.

(<sup>5</sup>) II. 1. *household*.

(<sup>6</sup>) II. 1. *awe, fear*.

(<sup>7</sup>) *And-wyrdan* (I. 2.) *to answer*; *and-wyrd* (II. 3.) *answer*; G. *ant-wort-en*. Ge- is used before no other prefixes but and- and ed-, as should have been stated p. 41, note 2.

(<sup>8</sup>) *Grétan* (I. 2.) *to greet, salute*.

(<sup>9</sup>) *A'r-wurð-líca* (II.) *honorable*; G. *ehr-würd-ig*.

(<sup>10</sup>) *Land of the Egyptians*: comp. *Engla-land*, &c. p. 72.

(<sup>11</sup>) (*Hit*) *of-þincð it repenteth*: L. *pénitit*: see p. 86-7.

6. Nú twá gear wæs<sup>(1)</sup> hunger ofer ealle eordan, and git sceolon<sup>(2)</sup> fife on þám man ne mæg náðer ne erian<sup>(3)</sup> ne ripan<sup>(4)</sup>.

7. And God me sende tó-þám-þæt ge beón ge-healdene, and þæt ge habbon þæt ge magon big-lybban<sup>(5)</sup>.

8. Þæt naes ná eówres þances<sup>(6)</sup> ac þurh God þe ic þurh his willan<sup>(7)</sup> hider a-send wæs, se dyde me swylce ic Pharaones fæder wære, and his hiredes hláf-ord, and he sette me tó ealdre ofer Egipta-land.

9. Farad hræd-lice<sup>(8)</sup> tó mínum fæder, and secgad him þæt God me sette tó hláf-orde eallum Egiptum; beódað him þæt he fare tó me,

10. And wunige<sup>(9)</sup> on Gessen-lande<sup>(10)</sup>, and beó me ge-hende, he and his suna, and his bearna bearn, and eówre sceáp, and eówre hrýðer-heorda<sup>(11)</sup> and eal þæt ge ágon.

11. And ic eów féde. Git synd síf hunger-gear bæstan<sup>(12)</sup> : dóð þus þæt ge ne for-wurdon<sup>(13)</sup>.

12. Nú ge ge-seóð hú hit mid mie is, and ge ge-hýrad hwæt ic tó eów sprece.

(1) Has been : see p. 62, note 2.

(2) Shall be, are to come.

(3) To ear, plough ; L. arare.

(4) I. 2. to resp. (5) See p. 73.

(6) Of your own accord : see p. 70. Vulg. has " vestro consilio."

(7) Through whose will : see p. 31.

(8) Quickly ; =hraðe : see p. 25.

(9) Wunian to dwell ; G. wohnen.

(10) Land of Gessen.

(11) Hrýðer (III. 1.) ox, rother-beast ; G. rind, D. rund : mark the n dropped and the vowel lengthened : see p. 2. Heord (II. 3.) herd ; G. herde.

(12) Behind, to come.

(13) For-weorðan (III. 1.) to perish ; observe the force of the prefix for-

12. Cýðadþ mínum fæder eal mín wuldor, and ealle þa þing þe ge ge-sáwon on Egipta-lande: éfstadþ and léðadþ hine tó me.

14. And he clypte<sup>(1)</sup> heora ælcne, and cyste<sup>(2)</sup> híg,

15. And weóp: æfter þison híg ne dorston sprecan wið hine.

16. Þá spræc man ofer-eal<sup>(3)</sup>, and wið-mársode<sup>(4)</sup> þæt Iosepes bróðru comon tó Pharaone, and Pharao wæs glæd, and eal his hired;

17. And he beád Iosepe þæt he bude his bróðrum and þus cwæde: Sýmad<sup>(5)</sup> eówre assan, and farað tó Chanaan-lande.

18. And nimað þær eówerne fæder, and eówre mægða<sup>(6)</sup>, and cumað tó me, and ic eów sylle ealle Egipta góð.

19. Beód him eác þæt híg nimon wænas<sup>(7)</sup> tó hyra cilda fare<sup>(8)</sup> and tó hyra ge-mæccena<sup>(9)</sup>, and beód him eác þæt híg nimon hyra fæder, and éfston hidre swá híg hrædost magon.

20. And ne for-læte ge nán þing<sup>(10)</sup> of eówrum yddisce<sup>(11)</sup>, for-þám ealle Egipta spéda<sup>(12)</sup> beóð eóvre.

21. Israèles suna dydon swá him be-boden wæs, and

(<sup>1</sup>) Clyppan (I. 2.) *to embrace, clip.*

(<sup>2</sup>) Cyssan (I. 2.) *to kiss*; G. küssen.      (<sup>3</sup>) *Everywhere*; G. über-all.

(<sup>4</sup>) Wið-mársian *to noise, spread abroad*; from wið and mære.

(<sup>5</sup>) Sýman (I. 2.) *to load*.      (<sup>6</sup>) Mægð (II. 3.) *family, household, tribe.*

(<sup>7</sup>) Wægn, wæn (II. 2.) *wagon, wain*; G. *wagen*.

(<sup>8</sup>) Far (II. 3.) *going, journey*; hence *fare*.

(<sup>9</sup>) Ge-mæcca, -e (I. 2, 3.) *husband, wife, companion, mate*; O. *make*.

(<sup>10</sup>) Vulg. “ *Nec dimittatis quicquam.*”

(<sup>11</sup>) Yddisco *find*, from etan; hence P. eddish, ashen, &c. *feed for cattle, after-grass, stubble.*

(<sup>12</sup>) Spéd *wealth*.

Iosep him sealde wænas eal-swá Pharao him beád, and fór-mete<sup>(1)</sup>,

22. And sealde hyra ælcum twá scrúd<sup>(2)</sup>; and he sealde Beniamine fif scrúd, and þreo hundred sylfringa<sup>(3)</sup>.

23. And he sende his fæder tyn assan þe wæron gesýmed mid feo, and mid hrægle<sup>(4)</sup>, and mid Egipta welon<sup>(5)</sup>, and tyne þe bæron hwæte and hláf.

24. Witod-líce he let þá his ge-bróðru faran, and cwaed tó him: Ne for-læte ge nán þing<sup>(6)</sup> be wege, ac beóð swíðe ge-sóme<sup>(7)</sup>.

25. Híg foron of Egipta-lande, and comon tó Chanaan-lande tó Iacobe hyra fæder,

26. And cwaédon tó him: Iosep lyfað þín sunu, and wealt ealles Egipta-landes. Þá Iacob þæt ge-hýrde þá þuhte him swylce he of hefigum slépe a-wacode,

27. And þeah he him ne ge-lýfde, híg rehton<sup>(8)</sup> him hyra færeld<sup>(9)</sup> be ende-byrdnesse<sup>(10)</sup> and þá he ge-seáh þa wænas, and ealle þa þing þe him ge-sende wæron, his gást wearð ge-ed-cwicod<sup>(11)</sup>,

(1) "Provision for the way;" fór (II. 3.) journey; mete (II. 2.) meat.

(2) Vulg. "stolas;" "changes of reiment;" scrúd (II. 1.) garment, shroud.

(3) Sylfring (II. 2.) "piece of silver."

(4) Hrægl (II. 2.) raiment, garment; hence night-reil.

(5) Wela (I. 2.) weal, wealth: pl. riches, prosperity.

(6) Perhaps repeated by mistake from v. 5. Vulg. has here "Ne irascamini:" we "see that ye fall not out."

(7) Mild, gentle.

(8) Reccan (II. 2.) to relate.

(9) Going, journey, or perhaps, how they had fared.

(10) In order, succession: Vulg. "Illi econtra referebant omnem ordinem rei."

(11) Ge-ed-cwician to make alive again, quicken, cwic, cue, &c. quick, living.

28. And he cwæd: Ge-noh ic hæbbe gif Iosep  
mín sunu gyt leofad; ic fare and ge-seó hine sér-pám-  
þe ic swelte<sup>(1)</sup>.

---

VI.—*Exodus*, ch. xxiii. (6)

1. Ne under-fóh<sup>(3)</sup> leáse<sup>(4)</sup> ge-witnesse<sup>(5)</sup>.
2. Ne fylig<sup>(6)</sup> þú þám folce þe yfel wille dóñ, ne  
be-foran manegon sóðes ne wanda<sup>(7)</sup>.
3. Ne miltsa<sup>(8)</sup> þú þearfan<sup>(9)</sup> on dóme.
4. Gif þú ge-méte þínes feóndes oxan odde assan,  
læd hine tó him.
5. Gif þú ge-seó his assan licgan under byrdene<sup>(10)</sup>,  
ne gá þú þanon, ac hefe hine úp mid him.
6. Ne þú ne wanda on þearfan dóme.
7. Fleóh<sup>(11)</sup> leásunga<sup>(12)</sup>; un-scyldigne and riht-wísne  
ne of-sléh þú.

(1) Sweltan (III. 1.) *to die*.

(2) This chapter is imperfect in several places, and the 30th verse is wanting.

(3) Under-fangan, -fón (II. 2.) *to undertake, receive*.

(4) Leás (I.) *false, lying*. (5) *Witness, testimony*. (6) See p. 42.

(7) Wandian *to fear, &c.*: shrink not, decline not from the truth through fear. (8) Miltaiian *to pity*; from milde. (9) Þearf (I.) *poor*.

(10) Byrðen (II. 3.) *burthen*; G. bürde: from beran.

(11) Fleógan, fléón (II. 2.) *to flee, fly*; G. fliehen, fliegen.

(12) Either sing, or plur. Nouns in -ung sometimes form the oblique cases singular in -a. Leásung *leaving, lying*, from leás.

8. Ne nim þú lác<sup>(1)</sup> þa a-blendað gleáwne<sup>(2)</sup>, and a-wendað<sup>(3)</sup> riht-wisra word.

9. Ne beó þú sel-peódigum<sup>(4)</sup> gram<sup>(5)</sup>, for-þám ge wáeron sel-peódie on Egípta-lande.

10. Sáw<sup>(6)</sup> six ger<sup>(7)</sup> þín land, and gadera<sup>(8)</sup> his wæstmas,

11. And læt hit restan on þám seofodan, þæt pearfan eton þearf-of, and wild-deór<sup>(9)</sup>: dó swá on þínnum wínearde, and on þínnum ele-beámon<sup>(10)</sup>.

12. Wyre six dagas, and ge-swíc<sup>(11)</sup> on þám seofodan, þæt þín oxa and þín assa híg ge-reston, and þæt þínre wylne sunu sý ge-hyrt<sup>(12)</sup>, and se útan-cumena<sup>(13)</sup>.

13. Healdad<sup>(14)</sup> ealle þa þing þe ic eów sæde, and ne swerie ge þurh útan-cumenra goda naman.

14. Prywa on gere ge-wurdiað<sup>(15)</sup> míinne freols.

15. Þú ytst þeorf-symbel<sup>(16)</sup>; sefon dagas ge etad

(1) *Giftu*, here neuter II. 1., but see p. 9.

(2) Gleáw (I.) skilful, clever; G. klug.

(3) A-wendan (I. 2.) to turn away, subvert, pervert; G. ab-wenden: the prefix a- sometimes has the force of of.

(4) *Æl-peódig* (II.) foreign, strange; *æl-* is here == *dλλ̄-oç*, L. al-ius, alienus; and not to be confounded with *æl* for eal, in *æl-mihtig*, *æl-beorht* and the like. (5) *Angry, cruel.* Vulg. "molestus."

(6) Sáwan (II. 2.) to sow; G. sähen.

(7) *= gear*, see p. 5.

(8) Gaderian to gather.

(9) Wild beasts.

(10) Olive-tree; ele oil, beám boom, tres; G. baum, D. boom, whence boom. (11) Ge-swican (III. 2.) to cease.

(12) Ge-hyrtan (I. 2.) to encourage, hearten, strengthen, from *heorte*.

(13) Stranger, one come from without; it-on, see p. 71.

(14) Ge-weorðian (wurðian) to honour, es't'ants; G. würdigen.

(15) Feast of unleavened bread.

þeorf, swá ic þe be-beád, on þæs mondæs tíð níwra(<sup>1</sup>) wæstma, þá þú út-fóre of Egipta-lande: ne cymst þú bútan ælnyssan (<sup>2</sup>) on míne ge-sýhðe.

16. Heald þá symbol-tíde þæs mondæs frum-sceatta(<sup>3</sup>) þínas weordes þe þú on lande séwest, and on geres útgange (<sup>4</sup>), þonne þú ge-gaderast þíne wæstmas tó-gædre.

17. Þrywa on gere æle wæpned-man (<sup>5</sup>) set-ýwð (<sup>6</sup>) be-foran Dryhtne (<sup>7</sup>).

18. Ne offra þú þínre on- sægdnesse blód (<sup>8</sup>) úppan beorman (<sup>9</sup>), ne se rysel (<sup>10</sup>) ne be-lýfð (<sup>11</sup>) of morgen (<sup>12</sup>).

19. Bring þíne frum-sceattas tó Godes húse.

20. Nú ic sende míinne engel þæt he þe láde in-tó þærre stówe þe ic ge-gearwode (<sup>13</sup>).

\* 21. Gým (<sup>14</sup>) his, and ge-hýr his stemne (<sup>15</sup>), for-þám

(<sup>1</sup>) Níwe (I.) *new*; *neow*, L. *novus*, G. *neu*, D. *nieuw*.

(<sup>2</sup>) Ælmysse (I. 3.) *aims*; (S. *awmous*;) *gift* would here have been better.

(<sup>3</sup>) *First fruits*; *fruma beginning, sceat* (II. 2.) *coin, value, profit, ðjs.* hence *shot, scot*: G. *schatz treasure*.

(<sup>4</sup>) Ut-gang (II. 2.) *out-going, end*; G. *aus-gang*.

(<sup>5</sup>) Lit. *weaponed-man*; the common use of this word for *male* is a strong proof of the warlike habits of our A. S. forefathers.

(<sup>6</sup>) Æt-ýwan (-ian, -eówian) (I. 2.) *to appear, show, &c.*

(<sup>7</sup>) Dryhten (II. 2.) *Lord, chief*; dryht (II. 3.) *troop, band*.

(<sup>8</sup>) Blód (II. 1.) *blood*; G. *blut*, D. *bloed*.

(<sup>9</sup>) Beorme (I. 3.) *barm, leaven, leavened bread*. (<sup>10</sup>) II. 2. *fat*.

(<sup>11</sup>) Be-lýfan (III. 2.) *to remain*; G. *b-leiben*, D. *b-lijven*.

(<sup>12</sup>) Morgen, mergen, merigen (II. 2.) *morn, morrow*; G. and D. *morgen*.

(<sup>13</sup>) Gearwian *to prepare, make yare or ready*.

(<sup>14</sup>) Gýman (I. 2.) *to take care of, care for, heed, attend to*.

(<sup>15</sup>) Stemn — stein voice; G. *stimme*, D. *stem*.

he ne for-gifð þonne ge syngiad, and míni nama is on him.

22. Ic beó þínra feónða feónd,
  23. And þe in ge-láde tó Amorrea lande.
  24. Ne ge-eád-méd<sup>(1)</sup> þú hira godas, ac to-brec hira an-línessa.
  25. Þeówiad Dryhtne : ic ge-bletsie eów, and dó selce un-trumnesse fram eów,
  26. And ge-íce<sup>(2)</sup> eówer dagas,
  27. And a-flýme<sup>(3)</sup> þíne fýnd be-foran þe ;
  28. And ic a-sende hyrnetta<sup>(4)</sup>, þe afýmad Efeum<sup>(5)</sup> and Chananeum,
  29. Twelf monðum a-r þú in-fare.
- \* \* \* \* \*

31. Ic sette þíne ge-máero<sup>(6)</sup> fram þáre Reádan<sup>(7)</sup> ✓  
Sé oð Palastinas Sé, and fram þám wéstene oð þæt flód.

32. Nafa þú náne sibbe<sup>(8)</sup> wið hira godas,
33. Þý-læs híg þe be-swícon<sup>(9)</sup>.

(1) Eáð-médan (eád-) (I. 2.) *to humble one-self, worship, "bow down to;"*  
from eáð and móð.

(2) Ge-fcan (I. 2.) *to increase, lengthen, eke out;* from eác.

(3) A-flýman (I. 2.) *to put to flight, from fleáum flight.*

(4) Hyrnet horvet. (5) *The Hivite; Vulg. "Hevæum."*

(6) Ge-máero (III. 1.) *boundary; P. meer.*

(7) Reád (I.) *red; G. roth, D. rood.*

(8) Sib (II. 3.) *peace.*

(9) Be-swícan (III. 2.) *to decisive.*

VII.—*Saxon Chronicle*(<sup>1</sup>).

\* \* \* The Saxon Chronicle is a series of annals of A. S. affairs, from the earliest times to A.D. 1154, compiled by Monks.

Brytene(<sup>2</sup>) ig-land(<sup>3</sup>) is eahta hund mila lang and twá hund mila brád; and her syndon on þám ig-lande fíf ge-peóda(<sup>4</sup>), Englisc, and Bryt-Wylisc(<sup>5</sup>), and Scytt-isc(<sup>6</sup>), and Pyhtisc(<sup>7</sup>), and Bóc-leden(<sup>8</sup>). Æ'rost wáeron búgend(<sup>9</sup>) þisses landes Bryttas(<sup>10</sup>) þa comon of Armo-rica(<sup>11</sup>), and ge-sáeton (<sup>12</sup>) súðan-weard Brytene árost.

A.D. 449. Her(<sup>13</sup>) Martianus and Valentinianus on-fengon ríce(<sup>14</sup>), and rícsodon sefon winter. On heora dagum Hengest(<sup>15</sup>) and Horsa fram Wyrtgeorne(<sup>16</sup>) ge-ladode(<sup>17</sup>) Brytta cyninge tó fultume, ge-sóhton(<sup>18</sup>) Brytene on þám stede(<sup>19</sup>) þe is ge-nemned Yp-wines-fleót(<sup>20</sup>), árost Bryttum tó fultume, ac hí eft(<sup>21</sup>) on hí(<sup>22</sup>)

(<sup>1</sup>) Taken with some slight changes from the edition of Dr. Ingram, President of Trinity College, Oxford.      (<sup>2</sup>) II. 2. *Britain*.

(<sup>3</sup>) Ig-land, ea-land, (II. 1.) e, *island*; G. ei-land, D. ey-land : *island* has arisen from a confusion with *isle*, (L. *insula*, G. *insel*, F. *île*, Ile) with which it has no connexion.      (<sup>4</sup>) Ge-peód (II. 3.) *nation*.

(<sup>5</sup>) Lit. *British-Welsh*.

(<sup>6</sup>) *Scottish*.

(<sup>7</sup>) *Pictish*.

(<sup>8</sup>) *Book-Latin, Roman*.

(<sup>9</sup>) For búend (II. 2.) *inhabitants*: see p. 15.

(<sup>10</sup>) Brytte (II. 2.) *Briton*.      (<sup>11</sup>) A various reading has Armenia.

(<sup>12</sup>) Ge-sittan (II. 1.) *to occupy, settle in*.

(<sup>13</sup>) Here and below means *this year*.      (<sup>14</sup>) *The Roman Empire*.

(<sup>15</sup>) II. 2. Not *Hengist* as commonly spelt; *horsa*, G. *bengst*. *Horsa* too meant the same.      (<sup>16</sup>) *Vortigern*.      (<sup>17</sup>) Laðian (I. 1.) *to invite*, G. *laden*.

(<sup>18</sup>) Sécan is here *to go to*; comp. the use of L. *peterere*.

(<sup>19</sup>) II. 2. *Place, stead*; G. *statt, stütte*.

(<sup>20</sup>) *Ebb's-et* in the Isle of Thanet; *fleót stream, creek*; *fleet* is common in locname. *asal*      (<sup>21</sup>) *Again, afterwards*.      (<sup>22</sup>) *Against them; in eo*

fuhton. Se cing hét hí feohtan on-gean Pyhtas, and hí swá dydon, and sige<sup>(1)</sup> hæfdou swá-hwar-swá hí comon. Hí þá sendon tó Angle<sup>(2)</sup> and héton heom sendan máre fultum, and heom sergan Bryt-Walena<sup>(3)</sup> náhtnesse<sup>(4)</sup>, and þæs landes cysta<sup>(5)</sup>. Hí þá sendon heom máre fultum: þá comon þa men of þrym mægðum Germanie<sup>(6)</sup> :—of Eald-Seaxum<sup>(7)</sup>, of Englum<sup>(8)</sup>, of Iótum<sup>(9)</sup>. Of Iótum comon Cant-ware<sup>(10)</sup>, and Wiht-ware, þæt is seó mæd<sup>(11)</sup> þe nú eardadæ<sup>(12)</sup> on Wiht<sup>(13)</sup>, and þæt cyn on West-Seaxum<sup>(14)</sup> þe man git hét Iótena-cyn. Of Eald-Seaxum comon East-Seaxan<sup>(15)</sup>, and Súd-Seaxan<sup>(16)</sup>, and West-Seaxan. Of

(<sup>1</sup>) II. 2. victory; G. sieg.

(<sup>2</sup>) Angle, Angle (Ongle) (II. 2.) country of the Angles, the present Sleswig.

(<sup>3</sup>) Bryt-Wala (I. 2.) lit. British-Welshman: the Anglo-Saxons called all not of Gothic race Walan or Wealas, equivalent to strangers or foreigners, and the Germans still keep up the same idea, calling the French and Italians Welschen, and anything strange or outlandish wälsch.

(<sup>4</sup>) Náhtnes (II. 3.) goodness for nought, cowardice.

(<sup>5</sup>) Cyst (II. 3.) choice, excellence; pl. cysta good things, abundance.

(<sup>6</sup>) Gen. of Germania; see p. 13.

(<sup>7</sup>) Seaxa (I. 2.) Saxon: the Old-Saxon dialect nearly resembled the A. S.

(<sup>8</sup>) See p. 19.

(<sup>9</sup>) Ióta, Iúta (I. 2); the Jutes occupied the present Jutland, which was bounded to the south by Angle; the Old-Saxons' land, now Holstein, lay still further southward.

(<sup>10</sup>) Dwellers in Kent: see p. 20.

(<sup>11</sup>) = mægð, p. 5.

(<sup>12</sup>) Eardian to dwell, from eard.

(<sup>13</sup>) Or Wiht-land Isle of Wight.

(<sup>14</sup>) The West-Saxons occupied Berks, Hants, Wilts, Dorset, and parts of Somerset and Devon.

(<sup>15</sup>) The East-Saxons occupied Essex, as the name implies, Middlesex, and part of Herts.

(<sup>16</sup>) The South-Saxons had Sussex, named after them, and Surrey.

Angle comon (se á síð-pán stód wéstig<sup>(1)</sup> be-twix Iótum and Seaxum) Eást-Engle<sup>(2)</sup>, Middel-Engle<sup>(3)</sup>, Mearce<sup>(4)</sup>, and ealle Nord-Ymbra<sup>(5)</sup>. \* \* \*

A.D. 596. Her Gregorius Papa sende tó Brytene Augustinum, mid wel monegum<sup>(6)</sup> munucum<sup>(7)</sup> þa Godes word sceoldon bodian<sup>(8)</sup> Angel-cynne. \* \*

A.D. 806. Her se mona a-þýstrode<sup>(9)</sup> on kalendis Septembris<sup>(10)</sup>. Eád-wulf Nordan-Hymbra cyning wæs of his ríce a-drifен, and Heard-byrht bisceop on Hagustealdes-e<sup>(11)</sup> forð-ferde<sup>(12)</sup>. Eác on þisum ylcan geare pridie nonas Iunii<sup>(13)</sup> róde-tácn<sup>(14)</sup> weard at-eówed<sup>(15)</sup> on þám monan, ánes Wódnes-dæges<sup>(16)</sup>,

<sup>(1)</sup> Waste, desert.

<sup>(2)</sup> East Anglia comprised Norfolk, Suffolk, and Cambridge.

<sup>(3)</sup> The Middle Angles had Salop, Worcester, Warwick, Gloucester, &c.

<sup>(4)</sup> Mercia included the remaining midland counties, together with Chester, Derby, Nottingham, and Lincoln.

<sup>(5)</sup> Northumbria consisted of York, Lancaster, and the other northern counties: as these were united or divided into two kingdoms, Saxon England formed either a heptarchy or an octarchy.

<sup>(6)</sup> Very many, a good number.

<sup>(7)</sup> Munuc (II. 2.) monk; G. mönch, L. monachus.

<sup>(8)</sup> To announce, proclaim, preach; hence to bode: boda messenger; G. bote, D. boode.

<sup>(9)</sup> A-þýstrian to become dark, be eclipsed, from þýstru (p. 10.); þýster dark; G. düster.

<sup>(10)</sup> Sept. 1.: the Roman name for the day of the month was used sometimes, but not always: see p. 36. <sup>(11)</sup> Hætem.

<sup>(12)</sup> Went forth, departed, died.

<sup>(13)</sup> June 4.

<sup>(14)</sup> Sign of the Cross; ród (II. 3.) rood, Cross; tácn token, sign; G. zeichen, D. tecken. <sup>(15)</sup> At- for æt-; see p. 4.

<sup>(16)</sup> "Of a Wednesday," as we still say.

innan þére daginge<sup>(1)</sup>; and eft on þisum geare tertio kalendas Septembris<sup>(2)</sup> án wundor-lic trendel<sup>(3)</sup> weard at-eówed a-bútan þére sunnan. \* \*

And þý ylcan geare (A.D. 853.) sende Ædel-wulf cyning Ælf-red his sunu tó Rome, (þá wæs þonne Leo<sup>(4)</sup> Papa on Rome) and he hine tó cyninge gehálgode, and hine him tó bisceop-suna ge-nam<sup>(5)</sup>. \*

A.D. 871. þá feng Ælf-red Ædel-wulf-ing<sup>(6)</sup> tó<sup>(7)</sup> West-Seaxna ríce; and þæs ymb sénne monad<sup>(8)</sup> gefeaht Ælf-red cyning wið ealne þone here<sup>(9)</sup> lytle werode<sup>(10)</sup> at Wil-túne<sup>(11)</sup> and hine lange on dæg ge-flýmde<sup>(12)</sup>, and þa Deniscan áhton wæl-stówe<sup>(13)</sup> ge-weald. And þæs geares wurdon nigon folc-gefeoht<sup>(14)</sup> ge-fohten wið þone here on þám cyne-ríce be súdan Temese, bútan þám þe him Ælf-red, and ealdor-men<sup>(15)</sup>, and cyninges þegnas oft ráda<sup>(16)</sup> on-ridon þe man ná ne rínde<sup>(17)</sup>. And þæs geares

(<sup>1</sup>) Daging (see p. 67.) down ; dagian to dawn, O. dæw.

(<sup>2</sup>) Aug. 29. (<sup>3</sup>) Round, circle : hence to trundle. (<sup>4</sup>) Leo IV.

(<sup>5</sup>) Stood sponsor to him at Confirmation ; an ancient custom of the Churches ; see the 3rd rubric after Confirmation, and thereon Wheatley, &c.

(<sup>6</sup>) Son of Æthelwulf ; see p. 65.

(<sup>7</sup>) Feng tó “ took to,” as is still said. (<sup>8</sup>) One month after that.

(<sup>9</sup>) The Danish host of plunderers was called emphatically “ se here” the army ; G. das heer : see p. 9.

(<sup>10</sup>) Abl. with a little bend : werod II. 1. (<sup>11</sup>) Wil-tún Wilton.

(<sup>12</sup>) Ge-flýman — a-flýman above.

(<sup>13</sup>) Wæl-stów slaughter-place, battle-field ; G. wahl-platz.

(<sup>14</sup>) Great battles, battles of nations.

(<sup>15</sup>) Ealdor-man (III. 2.) senator, chief ; hence aldermen.

(<sup>16</sup>) Rád (II. 3.) road, in-road, raid, foray ; from rídan.

(<sup>17</sup>) Ríman to count, number ; hence to rime ; G. reimen, D. rijmen.

wéron of-slegene nigon eorlas (<sup>1</sup>), and án cyning, and þý gearé namon West-seaxan frið (<sup>2</sup>) wið þone here.

A.D. 901. Her forð-ferde Ælf-red Ædel-wulfring six nihtum (<sup>3</sup>) áér Ealra Háligrá Mæssan (<sup>4</sup>), se wæs cyning ofer eal Angel-cyn bútan þám dréle þe under Dena on-wealde wæs. And he heóld þæt ríce 6ðer-healf (<sup>5</sup>) gear læs þe þryttig wintra (<sup>6</sup>).

### VIII.—*Apollonius.* (<sup>7</sup>)

\* \* \* Translated from the *Gesta Romanorum*, a monkish collection of tales, by whom is not known. This story is the original of the play called “Pericles Prince of Tyre.”

Sóð-líce mid-þý-þe þæs cynges dóhtor ge-seáh þæt Apollonius on eallum gódum cræftum swá wel wæs ge-togen (<sup>8</sup>), þá ge-feoll hyrë mód on his lufe. Þá æfter þæs beórscipes (<sup>9</sup>) ge-endunge, cweðd þæt

(<sup>1</sup>) Earl *earl*.

(<sup>2</sup>) Namon frið *made peace*: frið (II. 2.) *peace*; G. *friede*.

(<sup>3</sup>) The Anglo-Saxons reckoned time by *nights*: of this our *o'n-night* (*seven-night*) and *fo'r'night* (*fourteen-night*) are relics.

(<sup>4</sup>) *All Hallow's Mass, Feast of All Saints*: missæ I. 3.

(<sup>5</sup>) See p. 36.

(<sup>6</sup>) See p. 35, note 5.

(<sup>7</sup>) From Mr. Thorpe's edition, pp. 17—19, 23—25.

(<sup>8</sup>) Teógan, (*túgan*), *teón to draw &c., educate*: comp. G. *er-ziehen*; L. *educare* from *ducere*.

(<sup>9</sup>) Beór-scipte (II. 2.) *feast, banquet*; beór (II. 1.) *beer*.

mæden tō þám cynge: Leófa fæder, þú lýfdest  
me lytle sér þæt ic móste gifan Apollonio swá-  
hwaet-swá ic wolde of þínum gold-horde<sup>(1)</sup>. Arces-  
trates se cyng cwæd tō hyre: Gif him swá-hwaet-swá  
þú wile. Heó þá swíðe<sup>(2)</sup> blíðe<sup>(3)</sup> út-eóde and  
cwæd: Láreow Apolloni, ic gife þe be mínes fæder  
leáfe twá hund pund<sup>(4)</sup> goldes, and feower hund  
punda ge-wihte<sup>(5)</sup> seolfres, and þone mæstan dæl<sup>(6)</sup>  
deór-wyrðan<sup>(7)</sup> reáfes, and twentig þeówa manna.  
And heó þá þus cwæd tō þám þeówum mannum:  
Berað þás þing mid eów þe ic be-hét<sup>(8)</sup> Apollónio  
mínum láreowe, and lecgad innon búre<sup>(9)</sup> be-foran  
mínum freónendum. Þis weard þá þus ge-dón æfter  
þære cwene<sup>(10)</sup> hæse<sup>(11)</sup>, and ealle þa men hyre gife  
heredon þe híg ge-sáwon. Þá sóð-líce ge-endode se  
ge-beórsclipe, and þa men ealle a-rison, and gréttion  
þone cyng and þá cwene, and bædon híg ge-sunde<sup>(12)</sup>  
beón and hám ge-wendon. Eác-swylce<sup>(13)</sup> Apollonius

(1) *Hord* (II. 2.) *hoard, treasure.*

(2) *Swið* (I.) *strong, powerful; swiðe greatly, very; comp. L. (valide) valde, F. fort.* (3) *Blíðe* *blithe; D. blijde.*

(4) *Pund* (II. 1.) *pound.*

(5) *Ge-wiht* (II. 3.) *weight; G. ge-wicht.*

(6) *A very great deal.*

(7) *Precious; deór dear; G. theuer, D. duar.*

(8) *Be-hátan* (II. 2.) *to promise; G. ver-heissen.*

(9) *Búr* (II. 2.) *chamber, bower.*

(10) *Cwen* (II. 3.) *queen; queen is likewise from cwen, which meant originally woman; γυνη.*

(11) *Hæs* (II. 3.) *command, be-hest; G. ge-heiss.*

(12) *Ge-sund* *sound, whole; bade them fare-well; L. valere eos jussi-  
runt.* (13) *So in like manner.*

cwæd: þú góda cyning and earmra ge-miltsigend, and þú cwen lárø lusigend, beó go ge-sunde. Ille beséah<sup>(1)</sup> eác tó þám þeowum mannum þe þær mæden him for-gifен<sup>(2)</sup> hæfde, and heom cwæd tó: Nimad þás þing mid eów þe me seó cwen for-geaf, and gán we sécan úre gæst-hús<sup>(3)</sup> þær we magon ús ge-restan.

þá a-dred þær mæden þær heó næfre eft Apollonium ne ge-sáwe swá hrade swá heó wolde, and eóde þá tó hyre fæder and cwæd: þú góda cyning, lícad þe wel þær Apollonius þe purh ús tó-dæg ge-gódod<sup>(4)</sup> is, þus heonon fare, and cuman yfele men and be-reafian hine? Se cyng cwæd: Wel þú cwæde: hát him findan hwar he hine mæge wurd-lícost<sup>(5)</sup> ge-restan. þá dyde þær mæden swá hyre be-boden wæs, and Apollonius on-feng þære wununge<sup>(6)</sup> þe him be-téht<sup>(7)</sup> wæs, and þar-in-eóde, Gode þancigende þe him ne for-wyrnde cyne-líces wurdscipes and frúfre.

Ac þær mæden hæfde un-stille niht mid þære lufe on-téled<sup>(8)</sup> þára worda and sanga þe heó ge-hýrde æt Apollonige<sup>(9)</sup>, and ná leng heó ne ge-bád þonne hit dæg was, ac eóde sona swá hit leóht<sup>(10)</sup> wæs, and

(1) Be-seón (III.3.) *to look, look at.*

(2) For-gifan (II. 1.) *to give away, present, forgive.*

(3) Inn, guest-house; G. gast-haus.

(4) Ge-gódian, *to endow, enrich*; G. be-gütern.

(5) Wurð-lío (II.) *honourable.* (6) Dwelling, habitation; G. wohnung.

(7) Be-técan (I. 2.) *to commit, assign*; hence betake.

(8) On-álan (I. 2.) *to inflame.*

(9) Abl. or dat. formed A. S.-wise from Apollonius; the g inserted as p. 41.

(10) Light; G. licht.

ge-sæt be-foran hyre fæder bedde. Þá cwæd, se cyng : Leófe dóhtor, for-hwý eart þú þus sér-wacol<sup>(1)</sup>? Þæt mæden cwæd : Me a-wehton<sup>(2)</sup> þa ge-cneordnessa<sup>(3)</sup> þe ic girstan-dæg<sup>(4)</sup> ge-hýrde ; nú bidde ic þe for-pám þæt þú be-fæste<sup>(5)</sup> me úrum cuman Apollonige tó láre<sup>(6)</sup>. Þú wearð se cyng þearle<sup>(7)</sup> ge-blissod<sup>(8)</sup>, and hét feccan Apollonium and him tó cwæd : Mín dóhtor gyrnd þæt heó móte leornian æt þe þa ge-sæligan<sup>(9)</sup> láre þe þú canst, and gif þú wilt þisum vingum ge-hýrsum beón, ic swerige þe þurh mínes níces mægna<sup>(10)</sup> þæt swá-hwæt-swá þú on sá for-lure, ac þe þæt on land ge-stadelige<sup>(11)</sup>. Þá-þá Apollonius þæt ge-hýrde, he on-feng þám mædeune tó láre, and hyre tæhte swá wel swá he sylf ge-leornode.

\* \* \* \* \*

Þá wæs hyre ge-cýd þe þar ealdor<sup>(12)</sup> wæs, þæt þar wære cumen sum cyngc<sup>(13)</sup> mid his adume<sup>(14)</sup>, and mid his dóhtor, mid miclum gifum. Mid-þám-þe heó

(<sup>1</sup>) Early-wakeful ; comp. L. vigil.

(<sup>2</sup>) A-weccan (I. 2.) to awake (act.) G. er-wecken : the neut. is wacian (I. 1.) or wacan (II. 3.); G. wachen.      (<sup>3</sup>) Studies, accomplishments.

(<sup>4</sup>) Yesterday ; G. gestern ; comp. L. bestern-us.

(<sup>5</sup>) Be-fæstan (I. 2.) to commit, intrust.      (<sup>6</sup>) For instruction.

(<sup>7</sup>) Pearl (I.) strong ; þearle very, greatly ; comp. swiðe above.

(<sup>8</sup>) Blissian to rejoice ; bliss (II. 3.) bliss, joy.

(<sup>9</sup>) Ge-adlíg (I.) happy, blessed ; G. selig : hence silly, O. sely.

(<sup>10</sup>) Mægen (III. 1.) power.

(<sup>11</sup>) Ge-staðelian to establish, make good, from staðol station ; whence staðol-fæst steadfast, &c.

(<sup>12</sup>) Here used for chief priestess.

(<sup>13</sup>) See p. 5.

(<sup>14</sup>) Aðum son-in-law.

þæt ge-hýrde, heó hí sylfe mid cyne-lícum reáfe ge-frætwode<sup>(1)</sup>, and mid purpran ge-scrýdde, and hyre heáfod mid golde and mid gimmon<sup>(2)</sup> ge-glengde<sup>(3)</sup>, and mid miclum fæmnena<sup>(4)</sup> heápe<sup>(5)</sup> ymb-trymmed<sup>(6)</sup>, com tó-geanes þám cynge<sup>(7)</sup>. Heó wæs súðliche þearle wlítig<sup>(8)</sup>, and for þáre<sup>(9)</sup> miclan lufe þáre clænnesse hí sædon ealle þæt þar nære nán Diana<sup>(10)</sup> swá ge-cweme<sup>(11)</sup> swá heó.

Mid-þám-þe Apollonius þæt ge-seáh, he mid his aðume, and mid his dóhtor tó hyre urnon, and feollon ealle tó hyre fótum, and wéndon þæt heó Diana wære seó gyden<sup>(12)</sup> for hyre miclan beorhtnesse and wlíte. Þæt háli<sup>(13)</sup> ern<sup>(14)</sup> wearð þá ge-openod, and þa lác wáron in-ge-bróhte; and Apollonius on-gan þá sprecan and cweðan: Ic fram cild-háde wæs Apollonius ge-nemned, on Tirum ge-boren. Mid-þám-þe

(<sup>1</sup>) Ge-frætwian to adorn; frætu (III. 1.) ornament, fret.

(<sup>2</sup>) Gim (II. 2.) gem. (<sup>3</sup>) Ge-glengan (I. 2.) to adorn.

(<sup>4</sup>) Fæmne damsel; L. semina.

(<sup>5</sup>) Heáp (II. 2.) troop, heap; G. haufe, D. hoop.

(<sup>6</sup>) Ymb-trymmian to surround, trymmian to strengthen, hence to trim, guard, a garment, &c.

(<sup>7</sup>) To meet the king; comp. G. dem könige ent-gegen.

(<sup>8</sup>) Beautiful; wlíte (II. 2.) beauty.

(<sup>9</sup>) = þáre; at p. 5, l. 1, it should have been stated that á is sometimes changed to á, as well á to á. (<sup>10</sup>) Dat. of Diana.

(<sup>11</sup>) Pleasing, agreeable, from cwuman (cuman) to come; comp. G. be-quem con-venient.

(<sup>12</sup>) Feminine of god; see p. 66, and comp. G. gott, gött-in.

(<sup>13</sup>) = hálig, see p. 5.

(<sup>14</sup>) Ern, ern (II. 1.) house, room; see p. 71, n. 7.

ic be-com tó fullon and-gite<sup>(1)</sup> þá næs nán cræft þe wære fram cyngum be-gán<sup>(2)</sup> oddē fram ædēlum mannum þæt ic ne cūde: ic a-rædde<sup>(3)</sup> Antiochus rædels<sup>(4)</sup> þæs cynges tó-þón-þæt ic his dóhtor under-fenge me tó ge-mæccan, ac he sylfa wæs mid þám fúlestān horwe<sup>(5)</sup> þar-tó ge-peód<sup>(6)</sup>, and me þá syrwode<sup>(7)</sup> tó of-sleánne. Mid-þám-þe ic þæt for-fleáh<sup>(8)</sup>, þá weard ic on sá for-liden<sup>(9)</sup>, and com tó Cyrenense<sup>(10)</sup>. Þá under-fengc me Arcestrates se cyngc mid swá micelre lufe, þæt ic sæt nyhstan<sup>(11)</sup> ge-earnodc<sup>(12)</sup> þæt he geaf me his á-cennedan<sup>(13)</sup> dóhtor tó ge-mæccan. Seó fór þá mid me tó on-fonne mínon cyne-ríce, and þás míne dóhtor þe ic be-foran þe, Diana, ge-and-weard<sup>(14)</sup> hæbbe, a-cende on sáe, and hyre gást a-let<sup>(15)</sup>. Ic þá hí mid cyne-lícum réafe ge-scrýdde, and mid golde and ge-write<sup>(16)</sup> on ciste<sup>(17)</sup> a-legde<sup>(18)</sup>, þæt se-þe hí funde hí wurd-líce

(1) And-git (II. 1.) *understanding*.

(2) Be-gán to exercise, cultivate, attend to.

(3) A-rædan to read, guess; G. er-rathen to guess.

(4) II. 2. riddle; G. rätheel. (5) Horu (III. 1.) pollution.

(6) Ge-peódan (I. 2.) to join.

(7) Syrwan to plot; searu (III. 1.) ambush, stratagem.

(8) For-fleón to escape, flee from.

(9) Shipwrecked; líðan (III. 2.) to sail, for-líðan to sail with ill success, suffer shipwreck. (10) Cyrene. (11) At last.

(12) Earned, deserved, obtained.

(13) Á-cenned = án-cenned only begotten. (14) Present.

(15) A-letan = of-letan to let forth, give up.

(16) Ge-writ (III. 1.) writing, writ, inscription.

(17) Cist (II. 3.) chest, coffin; P. kist, G. kiste.

(18) Usually -lede; from -legan.

be-byrigde<sup>(1)</sup> , and þás míne dóhtor be-fæste þáum mán-fullestán<sup>(2)</sup> mannan to fédanne<sup>(3)</sup> . Fór me<sup>(4)</sup> þá tó Egípta-lande feower-tyne gear on heófe<sup>(5)</sup> : þá ic on-gean<sup>(6)</sup> com, þá sædon hí me þæt míni dóhtor wære forð-faren<sup>(7)</sup> ; and me wæs míni súr<sup>(8)</sup> eal ge-ed-níwad.

Mid-þám-be he þás þingc eal a-reht hæfde, Arcestraté súd-líce his wíf úp-a-rás, and hine ymb-clypte<sup>(9)</sup> . Þá niste ná Apollonius ne ne ge-lýfde þæt heó his ge-mæcca<sup>(10)</sup> wære, ac sceáf<sup>(11)</sup> hí fram him. Heó þá micelre stefne clypode, and cwæd mid wópe: Ic eom Arcestraté þín ge-mæcca, Arcestrates dóhtor þas cynges, and þú eart Apollonius míni láreow þe me lærdest! Þú eart se for-lidena man þe ic lufode, ná for gálnesse<sup>(12)</sup> ac for wís-dóume! Hwar is míni dóhtor? He be-wende hine þá tó Thasian<sup>(13)</sup> and cwæd: Þis heó is; and híg weópon þá ealle, and eác blis-sodon. And þæt word sprang geond eal þæt land þæt Apollonius se mára cyngc hæfde funden his wíf; and þá weard or-mæte<sup>(14)</sup> bliss, and þa or-

(<sup>1</sup>) (Be-) byrigan to bury.

(<sup>2</sup>) Mán-full wicked; mán (II. 1.) wickedness, sin, crime; mán-swara a man-sworn, perjured man; G. mein-eid, false oath.

(<sup>3</sup>) To feed, nourish, bring up.

(<sup>4</sup>) See p. 81.

(<sup>5</sup>) Heóf, heóf (II. 2.) sigh, groan, grief.

(<sup>6</sup>) Again, back again.

(<sup>7</sup>) Forð-faran = forð-feran.

(<sup>8</sup>) Pain, grief, sore.

(<sup>9</sup>) Ymb-clyppan to embrace, clip round.

(<sup>10</sup>) Ge-mæcca mats serves for both genders; thus correct n. 9, p. 111.

(<sup>11</sup>) Scúfan (III. 3.) to shove, push; G. schieben, D. schuiven.

(<sup>12</sup>) Lust.

(<sup>13</sup>) The A. S. dative, like Dianan above and Antiochian below.

(<sup>14</sup>) Measureless, immense; from or- and metan to mete, measure; see Additions, &c.

gana<sup>(1)</sup> wáron ge-togene<sup>(2)</sup>, and þa býman<sup>(3)</sup> ge-bláwene<sup>(4)</sup>, and þar weard blíðe ge-beórscepe ge-gearwod be-twux þám cynge and þám folce. And heó ge-sette hyre gyngran<sup>(5)</sup> þe hyre folgode tó sacerde, and mid blisse and heófe ealre þáre mægde on Ese-sum, heó fór mid hyre were<sup>(6)</sup>, and mid hyre adume, and mid hyre dóhtor tó Antiochian, þar Apollonio wæs þæt cyne-ríce ge-healden<sup>(7)</sup>. Fór<sup>(8)</sup> þá síð-þán tó Ti:uin<sup>(9)</sup> and ge-sette þar Athenagoras his adum tó cynge; fór þá sóð-líce þanon tó Tharsum mid his wife, and mid his dóhtor, and mid cyne-lícre fyrd<sup>(10)</sup>, and hét sona ge-læccan<sup>(11)</sup> Stranguilionem and Dionisiaden, and lédan be-foran him þar he sät on his prym-setle<sup>(12)</sup>.

(1) L. organum, commonly used in the plural, as *organs* formerly was.

(2) Lit. drawn; from some peculiar way either of playing the instrument or of blowing the bellows. (3) Býme trumpet.

(4) Bláwan (II. 2.) to blow; G. blähen.

(5) Gyngre (*female*) disciple, follower, lit. younger; G. jünger is used in the same sense.

(6) Wer (fir) II. 2. man, husband; L. vir; aior was the Scythian (Herod. iv. 110), and the Celtic dialects have a similar word.

(7) Had been kept for A.

(8) He, Apollonius went.

(9) Copied probably from the L. “(ad) Tyrum” (as also Tharsum below); tó seems properly to have always governed the dative.

(10) Fyrd (II. 3.) army, array, march, &c.; G. fahrt journey, &c.

(11) I. 2. to seize, catch.

(12) Glory-seat, throne; prym II. 2., setl III. 1.

IX.—*Boëthius. Cap. xvii.*<sup>(1)</sup>

\* \* \* King Ælfred translated Boëthius de Consolatione Philosophiæ, interweaving much original matter of his own: the following is his expansion of 3 or 4 lines, lib. II. prosa 7.

Hú þæt Mód<sup>(2)</sup> sæde þæt him næfre seo mægð and seo gitsung<sup>(3)</sup> for-wel<sup>(4)</sup> ne licode<sup>(5)</sup>, bútan tó lúðe<sup>(6)</sup> he tilade<sup>(7)</sup>.

þá se Wíz dóm þá þis leóð<sup>(8)</sup> a-sungen hæfde, þá ge-swígode<sup>(9)</sup> he, and þá and-sworede þæt Mód and þus cwað: Ea-lá Ge-scead-wísnes<sup>(10)</sup>! hwæt<sup>(11)</sup> þú wást þæt me næfre scó gitsung and seo ge-mægð þisses eord-lícan an-wealdes for-wel ne licode, ne ic ealles for-swíðe ne gyrnde þisses eord-lícan ríces. Búton lá ic wilnode þeah and-weorces<sup>(12)</sup> tó þám weorce

(1) From Mr. Cardale's edition, slightly altered.

(2) II. 1. neuter, while G. *muth* is masculine: another exception to the general rule, pp. 8, 9.

(3) II. 3. *desire, covetousness; gitsian to covet.*

(4) *Very well, too well; for- is sometimes intensive; for-nean well nigh, for-swíðe too much, excessively.* (5) See p. 86.

(6) *Unwillingly; see p. 70: láð (1.) hateful, loathsome.*

(7) *Tilian (teolian) to toil, till, &c.: see p. 42.*

(8) III. 1. *wang, lay; G. lied.*

(9) *Swigian to be silent; G. schweigen.*

(10) *Reason, discretion; sceadan (p. 54.) to divide, discriminate, &c.; G. scheiden.*

(11) *Hwæt, and lá (below) are often used as expletives.*

(12) *And-weorc (II. 1.) matter, material, substance.*

þe me be-boden wæs tō wyrcanne; þæt wæs þæt ic un-fracod-líce<sup>(1)</sup> and ge-risen-líce<sup>(2)</sup> mihte steóran<sup>(3)</sup> and reccan<sup>(4)</sup> þone an-weald þe me be-fæst wæs. Hwæt þú wást þæt nán mon ne mæg nánne cræft cýðan<sup>(5)</sup>, ne nánne an-weald reccan ne steóran, búton tólum<sup>(6)</sup> and and-weorce: þæt býd ælces cræfes and-weorc, þæt mon þone cræft búton<sup>(7)</sup> wyrcan ne mæg. Þæt býd þonne cyninges and-weorc and his tól mid tó rícsianne<sup>(8)</sup>, þæt he hæbbe his land ful-mannod<sup>(9)</sup>: he sceal hæbban ge-bed-men<sup>(10)</sup>, and syrd-men<sup>(11)</sup>, and weorc-men. Hwæt þú wást þætte bútan þisum tólum nán cyning his cræft ne mæg cýðan. Þæt is eác his and-weorc þæt he hæbban sceal tó þám tólum, þám þrym ge-ferscipum<sup>(12)</sup> bi-wiste<sup>(13)</sup>; þæt is þonne heora bi-wist, land tó bígienne<sup>(14)</sup>, and gifta<sup>(15)</sup>, and wæpna<sup>(16)</sup>, and mete, and ealo<sup>(17)</sup>, and cláðas<sup>(18)</sup>, and ge-hwæt

(1) Fracod (I.) *vile, shameful.*

(2) Ge-risen-líc (II.) *fit, proper; hit ge-rist it is fit, becoming.* — L. *debet.*

(3) Or stýran (I. 2.) *to steer, guide, govern;* G. *steuern*, D. *stuuren*.

(4) I. 3. *reckon for, give an account of.*

(5) *To make known, show forth, practise.*

(6) Tól (II. 1.) *tool.* (7) *Þæt—búton without which.*

(8) *To rule with:* rícaian, (rīxian); L. *reg-ere, rex-i.*

(9) *Mannian to man.* (10) *Prayer-men, clergy.*

(11) *Army-men, soldiers.*

(12) Ge-ferscipe (II. 2.) *company; ge-féra companion,* O. *fere.*

(13) Bi-wist (II. 3.) *provision, food: wist feast, &c.*

(14) Bígian=búan.

(15) Gift (II. 3.) *gift;* plur. *gifta* usually means *marriage.*

(16) Wæpen (III. 1.) *weapon;* D. *wapen.* (17) Ealo (-u) (III. 3. *ale.*

(18) Cláðas (II. 2.) *cloth, garment;* G. *kleid.*

þæs þe þa þreo ge-ferscipas be-hófiad: ne mæg he bútan þisum þás tól ge-healdan, ne bútan þisum tólum nán þára þinga wyrcaν þe him be-boden is tó wyrkanne. For-þý ic wilnode and-weorces þone an-weald mid tó ge-reccenne, þæt míne cræftas and an-weald ne wurden for-gitene and for-holens<sup>(1)</sup>; for-þám ælc cræft and ælc an-weald býð sona for-ealdod<sup>(2)</sup> and for-swígod<sup>(3)</sup>, gif he býð bútan Wís-dóme; for-þám-þe hwæt-swá<sup>(4)</sup> þurh dysige<sup>(5)</sup> ge-dón býð, ne mæg hit nán mon næfre tó cræfte ge-reccan. Þæt is nú hradost tó secganne þæt ic wilnode weord-ful-lice<sup>(6)</sup> tó lybbanne þá-hwile-þe ic lyfode, and æfter mínum life þám monnum tó læfanne þe æfter me wæren míni ge-mynd<sup>(7)</sup> on góðum weorcum.

## Cap. xxxiv. 10.

\* \* \* A free translation of part of prosa ii. lib. III.

þá cwæd ic: Ne mæg ic náne cwice wuht on-gitan þára þe wíte<sup>(8)</sup> hwæt hit<sup>(9)</sup> wille oddé hwæt hit nille, þe un-ge-néd<sup>(10)</sup> lyste for-weordan. For-þám ælc wuht wolde beón hál and lybbañ þára þe me cwice

(1) For-helan (II. 2.) *to hide*; G. ver-behlen.

(2) For-ealdian *to wear out, perish from old age*.

(3) For-swígian *to pass in silence*; G. ver-schweigen; here and above mark the force of for-.

(4) Usually swá-hwæt-swá.

(5) *Folly; dysig foolish, absurd; hence dizzy.*

(6) *Worthily, honorably.*

(7) II. 1. *memory, mind.*

(8) Wíte singular agreeing with wuht and not with þára þe; see p. 78.

(9) Hit neut. while wuht is fem.

(10) Nédan-mýdan.

þincð, bútan ic nát be treówum, and be wyrtum<sup>(1)</sup>, and be swyicum ge-sceaftum<sup>(2)</sup> swylce<sup>(3)</sup> náne sáwle nabbad. Þá smearcode<sup>(4)</sup> he and cwæd: Ne þearfst þú nó<sup>(5)</sup> be þáem<sup>(6)</sup> ge-sceaftum tweógan<sup>(7)</sup>, þe má þe<sup>(8)</sup> be þáem óðrum. Hú ne miht þú ge-seón þæt ælc wyrt and ælc wudu<sup>(9)</sup> wile weaxan on þám lande sélost<sup>(10)</sup> þe him betst ge-ríst; and him ge-cynde<sup>(11)</sup> býð and ge-wunc-líc<sup>(12)</sup>, and þær þær hit ge-fret<sup>(13)</sup>, þæt hit hrádost weaxan mæg, and latost wealcwigan<sup>(14)</sup>? Sumra wyrta oddé sumes wuda eard býð on dúnūm<sup>(15)</sup>, sumra on merscum<sup>(16)</sup>, sumra on mórum<sup>(17)</sup>, sumra on cludum<sup>(18)</sup>, sumra on barum<sup>(19)</sup> sondum<sup>(20)</sup>. Nim þonne swá wudu swa

(1) Wyrt (II. 3.) herb, wort.

(2) Ge-sceaft (II. 3.) creature, creature.

(3) Swylo—swylo answers to L. talis—qualia.

(4) Smearcian to smirk, smile.

(5) Né—ná.

(6) See p. 30.

(7) Tweógan, tweón (III. 3. See p. 60.) to doubt, from twá; comp. dœa-ȝerw, L. du-bitare, G. zwei-feln, from dœa (ðvo), duo, zwei.

(8) Any more than.

(9) III. 2. wood; D. weed.

(10) Best: sél good, excellent.

(11) Kind, kindly, natural: ge-cynd (II. 3.) nature, kind.

(12) Common, usual; G. ge-wöhnlich.

(13) Where it takes root, draws nourishment, lit. bites: fretan (II. 1.) (G. fressen) to eat, devour, fret.

(14) Fado; G. ver-welken, P. welk.

(15) Dún (II. 3.) down, hill, mountain; hence dún in local names: G. düne, D. duin, F. dune is a sand-hill near the sea.

(16) Mersc (II. 2.) marsh; P. mesh.

(17) Mór (II. 2.) moor; D. moer.

(18) Clud (II. 2.) rock, cliff.

(19) Bar (II.) bare; G. bar.

(20) Sand, sond (II. 2.) sand

wyrt, swá-hwæder-swá þú wile of þære stówe þe his eard and æðelo<sup>(1)</sup> býð on tó weaxanne, and sete on un-cyndre<sup>(2)</sup> stówe him, þonne ne ge-gréwð hit þær náuht, ac for-searað<sup>(3)</sup>; for-þám ælces landes ge-cynd is, þæt hit him ge-líce wyrta and ge-lícne wudu tydrige<sup>(4)</sup>; and hit swa déð, fríðað<sup>(5)</sup>, and fyrðrað<sup>(6)</sup> swíðe georne<sup>(7)</sup>, swá longe swá heora ge-cynd býð, þæt hí grówan móton. Hwæt wénst þú for-hwý ælc sád<sup>(8)</sup> grówe innon þá eordan, and tó ciðum<sup>(9)</sup> and tó wyrt-rumum<sup>(10)</sup> weorðe on þære eordan, búton for-þý-þe hí teóhhiað<sup>(11)</sup> þæt se stemn<sup>(12)</sup> and se helm<sup>(13)</sup> móte þý fæstor and þý leng standan? Hwý ne miht þú on-gitan, þeah þú hit ge-seón ne mœge, þæt eal se dæl, se-þe þæs treowes on twelf monðum ge-weaxed, þæt he on-ȝinnð of þám wyrt-rumum, and swá úp-weardes gréwð oð þone stemn, and síð-þán and-lang þæs piðan<sup>(14)</sup>, and and-lang þære rinde<sup>(15)</sup> oð þone helm, and síð-þán æster<sup>(16)</sup> þám bogum<sup>(17)</sup>, oð-þæt hit

(1) *Nature.*(2) *Un-cynde* (I.) *un-kind, unnatural.*(3) *For-searian to fade, become sear.*(4) *Tydrian to produce, bring forth, from tudor, tudr (II. 2.) offspring, progeny.*(5) *Friðian to make flourish, grow well; frið II. 2. peace, G. friede.*(6) *Fyrðrian to further, forward, assist, from forð.*(7) *Willingly, readily, earnestly; G. gerne.*(8) *Sád (II. 1.) seed; G. saat, D. zaad.*(9) *Cið (II. 2.) shoot, sprout.*(10) *Wyrt-ruma root.*(11) *Teóhhian to resolve, endeavour.*(12) *Stem, trunk.*(13) *Crown, head, top, helm-et.*(14) *Piða pit; D. pit.*(15) *Rind (II. 3.) rind, bark; G. rinde.*(16) *Boh (II. 2.) bough.*(17) *Along; like L. secundum.*

út-a-springd(1) on leásum(2), and on blostmum(3), and on blædum(4)? Hwý ne miht þú on-gitan þætte ælc wuht cwices býd innan-weard hnescost(5), and utan-weard heardost? Hwæt þú miht ge-seón hú þæt treów býd utan ge-scyrped(6), and be-wæfed(7) mid þære rinde wið þone winter, and wið þa stearcan(8) stormas, and eác wið þære sunnan hæto on sumera(9). Hwá mæg þæt he ne wundrige swylcra ge-sceafta úres Sceoppedes(10), and huru(11) þæs Sceoppedes? And þeah we his nú wundrien, hwylc úre mæg a-reccan(12) medem-líce(13) úres Sceoppedes willan, and an-weald, hú his ge-sceafta weaxad(14) and est waniad(15) þonne þæs tíma(16) cymd, and of heora sáde weordad est ge-ed-níwade(17), swylce hí þonne wurdon tó ed-sceafta?

(1) Ut-a-springan (III. 1.) *to spring, shoot out.*

(2) Leáf (II. 1.) *leaf*; G. *laub*.

(3) Blostm (II. 2.) *blossom*; D. *bloessem*.

(4) Blæd (II. 3.) *fruit, branch*; G. *blatt*, D. *blad* *leaf, blade*.

(5) Hnesc (I.) *soft, tender, mesh*.

(6) Ge-scyrpan (I. 2.) *to scarf, cover*; sceorp (II. 1.) *scarf*.

(7) Be-wæfan (I. 2.) *to clothe*; wæfela *garment*.

(8) Stearo (I.) *stark, strong, violent*; G. *stark*. (9) See p. 15.

(10) Sceoppend or Scyppend (p. 5.) *Creator*; scyppan *to create*; G. schaffen, schöpfen, D. *scheppen*.

(11) *At least, at all events.*

(12) *Recken, tell up.*

(13) *Fitly, worthily; medeme middeling, moderate, most.*

(14) *Wanian to wane, from wana went.*

(15) *The season for that.*

(16) See p. 42.

(17) *Ed-sceaft (II. 3.) new creation: as if they then became newly created.*

## CHAPTER IX.

---

### VERSE EXTRACTS.

---

#### I.—*Narrative Verse.*

Anglo-Saxon Poetry is of various kinds, distinguished by rime, by alliteration, or by both; the commonest however only, termed Narrative Verse, will be here described. Its chief characteristic is *Alliteration*<sup>(1)</sup>, or the correspondence of the first letters of a certain number of the most important words in each line of a couplet, two called *sub-letters* riming thus together in the first line, and answering to a third called the *chief letter* in the second. The first line has often but one sub-letter and never more than two; the second never more than one chief letter. The length of the lines varies much, each however must contain at least two emphatic or root syllables, with one or more unemphatic, that is prefixes, terminations, &c.: few lines have less than four syllables, two emphatic, and two uneinphatic, and some

(1) Alliteration is found in the Latin poetry of the middle ages, sometimes combined with line and final rime, and syllabic metre; it was used more or less in England along with other kinds of rime till a late period, and is still usual in the Scandinavian tongues. The Vision of Piers Ploughman (1350) is a long and regular specimen of English alliterative poetry, on the above rules. For a full account of the A.S. versification, see Rask's Grammar, pp. 136—68.

have as many as eight or nine, or even more. For example (¹) :

Hú lomp (²)	eów on	How befell it you on your
láde (³)		voyage
leófa Beó-wulf,		dear Beówulf,
þá þú færinga		when thou suddenly
feor ge-hogodes-		far off determinedst
sæcce (⁴) sécean		warfare to seek
ofer sealт wæter,		over <i>the</i> salt water,
hilde (⁵) tó Heorote (⁶) ?		battle at Heorot ?
Ac þú Hróð-gáre		Hast thou then Hróthgár
wid cūdne wean (⁷)		against <i>his</i> known plague
wihte ge-béttest (⁸),		ought booted,
márum þeódne (⁹) ?		<i>the</i> famous prince ?

Here the first couplet has in the first line two sub-letters, the *l* in *lomp* and *láde*, answering to the chief letter, the *l* in *leófa* in the second. The third line has but one sub-letter, the *f* in *færinga* which rimes with

(¹) Beówulf, ed. Kemble I. 3969—79.

(²) Limpan (III. 1.) *to happen*.

(³) Ládu (III. 3.) *líðan to travel, journey, chiefly by sea*.

(⁴) Sæc (II. 3.) *hence sack of a town*.

(⁵) Hild (II. 3.) *battle, war*.

(⁶) The palace of Hróthgár prince of a Danish tribe.

(⁷) Wea *evil, misfortune*.

(⁸) Bétan *to profit, improve, do good to*; bót (II. 3.) *boot, profit*.

(⁹) Though quantity and number of syllables seem no essential part of A. S. versification, many lines will bear a more or less regular scanning; thus most short lines consist either of two trochees, like the 2nd, 5th, and 11th above, or of a dactyl and spondee like the 10th: the 3rd, and 6th, also might be called imperfect adonics.

that in *feor* in the fourth. The third and fourth couplets have each two sub-letters like the first; the fourth again but one, *wid* being here not emphatic. The last line depends for its alliteration on the first of the next period; the couplet joining two lines by alliteration only, is often thus broken by the sense.

When the chief letter is a vowel or diphthong, the sub-letters must likewise be vowels or diphthongs, but need not be the same; as,

<i>U'tan ymbe æðelne englas stódon.</i>	Without round <i>the noble angels</i> stood.
<i>Eordan æ'ht-ge-streón, æpplede gold.</i>	<i>Earth's possessions, appled</i> <sup>(1)</sup> <i>gold.</i>

In the first example the sub-letters *u* and *æ* in the first line answer to the chief letter *e* in the second; in the other *eo*, *æ'*, and *æ* rime together.

When the chief letter is double, the sub letters are usually double likewise; as,

<i>Frægn from-líce</i> <sup>(2)</sup> <i>fruman and ende.</i>	<i>He</i> asked prudently <i>the beginning and end.</i>
<i>Scéán scír</i> <sup>(3)</sup> <i>werod, scyldas lixtion.</i>	<i>Shone</i> <i>the bright host,</i> <i>shields gleamed.</i>

---

The following prefixes and prepositions in composition are not reckoned as part of the alliteration, which

(1) Hence *d-appled*, as asphodel (O. *affadil*) has become *d-affadil*; *dappled-gray* is O. *apple-gray*, G. *apfel-grau*, D. *appel-graauw*: comp. F. *gris-pommelé*.

(2) From *brave*, *pious &c.* G. *fromm*.

(3) *Clear, sheer*; G. *schier*.

falls only on the first root-letter of the word before which they stand: viz. a-, be-(bi-), ge-, to-, for-, set, od, of, geond, burh; as,

**A-rédde and a-rehte**      *That he should read and relate*

**hwæt seó rún(¹) bude.** what the rune bade.

þonne be-hófad  
se-be her wunad. When it behoveth  
him that here dwelleth.

þá ge-worhte he þurh his Then wrought he through  
wís-dóm his wisdom  
tyn engla werod. ten legions of angels.

**pý-læs þú for-weorðe** Lest thou perish  
**mid þisum wær-logan (⁹)** with these false ones.

**Se-þe æt-feohtan** Who to fight  
**frum-gárum (3)—** with *the patriarchs*—

(<sup>1</sup>) Run (II. 3.) a secret, mystery, letter, hieroglyph; here the hand-writing on the wall: hence to round, whisper; G. raunen.

(\*) War-*loga* a breaker of faith; hence war-*lock*: war (II. 3.) a promise, connect, *loga* a liver, from *lebgan* to live.

<sup>(5)</sup> Gár (II. 2.) a (missile) weapon, spear (= L. *telum*), chief; it forms part of many proper names, as Gár-mund, Ead-gár Edgar, &c.

þú híe gielp-sceadan<sup>(1)</sup> Since them *those* braggart-rebels  
of-gisen hæfdon. had given up.

Sidð-pán híe feóndum After they *the* foes  
odð-faren hæfdon. had escaped.

Geond-folen fýre Filled through with fire  
and fær-cyle<sup>(2)</sup>. and intense cold.

Wylm<sup>(3)</sup> þurh-wódon<sup>(4)</sup> They *the* flame had passed  
swá him wiht ne sceód— through so that them no whit hurt—

Big (bi). on, ofer, ymb, sometimes rime and sometimes do not; as,

And begin þa beornas	And both the warriors
þe him big-stódon.	who stood by him.
Big-standað me strange	Stand by me strong com-
ge-neátas <sup>(5)</sup>	rades
þa ne willað me æt þám	who will not fail me at
stríde <sup>(6)</sup> ge-swícan.	the strife.

<sup>(1)</sup> Gilp (II. 2.) *boast*; *sceaða* *enemy, robber, &c.*

<sup>(2)</sup> Fær (II. 2.) *stratagem*; in composition it implies *suddenness, danger, or the like*; *fær-líc* *dangerous*; G. *ge-fahr* *danger*, *ge-fährlich* *dangerous*. Cyle II. 2.; hence *chill*; G. *kühle*.

<sup>(3)</sup> Wylm (II. 2.) *heat, boiling* (= L. *wästus*); *welan, weallan* *to boil*; G. *wallen*.

<sup>(4)</sup> Wadan (II. 3.) *to go*; L. *vadere*.

<sup>(5)</sup> Ge-neát; G. *ge-noss*, D. *ge-noot*.

<sup>(6)</sup> Stríð (II. 2.) G. *streit*, D. *strijd*.

*pæt we þær eágum  
on-lóciad.*

*On-hycgad nū  
hálige mihte.*

What we there with *our*  
eyes  
look upon.  
Think now on  
*the holy might.*

And þurh ofer-metto  
sóhton óðer land.  
Uton ofer-hycgan  
helm<sup>(1)</sup> þone miclan.

And through pride  
*they* sought another land.  
Let us despise  
the great Supreme.

*Eordan ymb-hwyrft  
and úp-rodor<sup>(2)</sup>.  
Heofon ymb-hweorfest,  
and þurh þine hálige  
miht—*

Earth's circuit  
and *the upper sky.*  
*Thou* compassest heaven,  
and through thy holy  
might—

And-, un-, ed-, in, tó, &c. are deemed emphatic and therefore rime; as,

Him þá Adam  
and-swarode.

Him then Adam  
answered.

*Un-lytel dæl  
eordan ge-sceafta.*

No little part  
of earth's creatures.

(1) Helm is the *top* of anything; see p. 133, n. 13.

(2) Rodor (ll. 2.) *heaven, sky.*

Ne hí ed-cerres<sup>(1)</sup>  
æfre móton wénan.

Nor they for return  
ever could hope.

Hœfde þá se ædeling  
in-ge-þancum<sup>(2)</sup>—

Had then the noble  
fervently—

Him þæt tæcen weard  
þær he tó-starode<sup>(3)</sup>.

To him that a token was  
where he stared.

## II.—*Metres of Boëthius*<sup>(4)</sup>.

\* \* \* The following is King Ælfred's translation of Boëthius, Lib. III. metr. I.

Se-be wille wyrcan	He that will work
wæstm-bære lond,	fruitful land,
a-teó of þám æcere	let him pluck off the field
ærest sona	first straightway
fearn <sup>(5)</sup> , and þornas <sup>(6)</sup> ,	fern, and thorns,
and fyrsas, swá-same <sup>(7)</sup>	and furzes, as also weeds,
weód <sup>(8)</sup> ,	

(1) Cer, cyr (II. 2.) turn; hence *char a turn of work*; *cyrran to turn, re-turn*; G. kehren.

(2) Adverb formed from the dative plural; see p. 70. Comp. G. ein-ge-denk *mindful, thoughtful*.

(3) Starian; G. starren, D. staaren.

(4) Chiefly from the Rev. S. Fox's edition.

(5) P. vearn, G. farn-kraut.

(6) Dorn; G. dorn.

(7) Same is connected with our *same*.

(8) Weód (II. 1.) D. wied.

þa þe willad  
 wel hwær<sup>(1)</sup> derian  
 clénum hwaète,  
 þý-læs he cida-leás<sup>(2)</sup>  
 licge on þám lande.  
 Is leóda<sup>(3)</sup> ge-hwém  
 þeos óðru bysen  
 esn be-héfe<sup>(4)</sup> ;  
 þæt is þætte þinced<sup>(5)</sup>  
 þegna ge-hwylcum.  
 huniges<sup>(6)</sup> beð-breád  
 healfe þý swétre,  
 gif he hwene<sup>(7)</sup> ár  
 huniges teare<sup>(8)</sup>,  
 bitres on-byrgad.  
 Býð eác swá-same  
 monna aég-hwylc  
 micle þý fægenra  
 lídes<sup>(9)</sup> wedres<sup>(10)</sup>,  
 gif hine lytle ár  
 stormas ge-stondad<sup>(11)</sup>,

that will  
 everywhere hurt  
 the clean wheat,  
 lest it gerin-less  
 lie on the land.  
 Is to all people  
 this other example  
 even as needful;  
 that is that seemeth  
 to every man  
 honey's bee-bread  
 half the sweeter,  
 if he a little ere  
 the honey's drop,  
 something bitter tasteth.  
 Is eke in like wise  
 every man  
 much the gladder  
 of fair weather,  
 if him a little ere  
 storms assail,

(1) Wel prefixed is intensive; wel-oft very often, wel-hraðe very soon.

(2) Cíð shoot, growth of any kind; hence kid, used either of a child or a young animal: comp. the uses of *imp*, *scion*, *sprig*, &c.

(3) Leóde people, persons; G. loute, D. lieden.

(4) Be-hófian to need, be-hooe. (5) See Additions, &c.

(6) G. honig.

(7) Hwene, hwon a little, S. a wheen.

(8) Tear (II. 2.) tear; G. zähru.

(9) Líðe tender, mild, lith; G. linde: observe the n dropped and the vowel lengthened, and see p. 2, and Additions, &c.

(10) Weder (II. 1.) G. wetter, D. weder.

(11) Observe the force of ge-; see p. 64.

and se stearca<sup>(1)</sup> wind  
nordan and eástan.  
Nánigum þúhte  
dæg on þonce<sup>(2)</sup>,  
gif seó dimme niht  
tér ofer eldum<sup>(3)</sup>  
egesan<sup>(4)</sup> ne bróhte.  
Swá þincð áhra ge-hwæm  
eorð-búendra  
séó sóðe ge-séld<sup>(5)</sup>  
simle þe betere,  
and þý wynsumre,  
þe he wita má,  
heardra hænda<sup>(6)</sup>,  
her a-dreógeð<sup>(7)</sup>.  
þú meaht eác micle þý éð  
on móð-sefan  
sóðe ge-sélda  
sweótolor ge-cnáwan,  
and tó heora cýððe<sup>(8)</sup>  
be-cuman síð-pán,  
gif þú úp-a-týhst

and the violent wind  
from north and east.  
To none would seem  
*the day delightful,*  
if the dim night  
before over men  
terror had not brought.  
So seemeth to every one  
of *the earth-dwellers*  
the true happiness  
ever the better,  
and the winsomer,  
as he more plagues,  
*and hard afflictions,*  
here suffereth.  
Thou mayst eke much the  
easier  
in *thy* mind  
true happinesses  
clearlier know,  
and to their country  
come afterwards,  
if thou pluckest up

(1) Stearc *stark, strong*; G. stark, D. sterk.

(2) Þono (þano) (II. 2.) *thank*; G. dank: comp. L. *gratias* and *gratus*.

(3) Eld, yld (II. 2.) *man, human being*.

(4) Egesa — *ege ære, dread*. (8) II. 3. from sél, sél *good*.

(5) Hænðu (hýnðu) III. 3.; heán *abject, miserable*.

(7) (A-)dreógan (III. 3.) *to suffer*; S. *dree*.

(6) Cýððu (III. 3.) also *acquaintance, knowledge, hence kith*.

ærest sona,  
 and þú a-wyrt-walast  
 of ge-wit-locan<sup>(1)</sup>  
 leáse ge-sælda,  
 swá swá londes-ceorl<sup>(2)</sup>  
 of his æceræ list<sup>(3)</sup>  
 yfel weód monig.  
 Síð þán ic þe secge  
 þæt þú sweótole meaht  
 sóðe ge-sælda  
 sona on-cnáwan<sup>(4)</sup>,  
 and þú æfre ne recast  
 æníges þinges  
 ofer þa áne,  
 gif þú hí ealles on-gitst.

first forthwith,  
 and thou rootest  
 out of *thy* understanding  
 false happinesses,  
 as *the* husbandman  
 off his field gathers  
 many *an* evil weed.  
 Afterwards I say to thee  
 that thou clearly mayst  
 true happinesses  
 soon recognise,  
 and thou never wilt reck  
 for anything  
 above them alone,  
 if thou them quite understandest.

(<sup>1</sup>) (Ge-) wit (II. 1.) *wit, loca* *fold, locker, place shut or locked up.*

(<sup>2</sup>) Ceorl man (*free not noble*) *husband, churl; S. carl; G. kerl.*

(<sup>3</sup>) Lesan (II. 1.) *to gather, pick; hence lease, to glean. G. lessan* *to gather* *reed; comp. L. legere.*

(<sup>4</sup>) Comp. G. er-kennen.

III.—*Cædmon* (<sup>1</sup>).

\* \* \* Cædmon, the Anglo-Saxon Milton, author of the Metrical Paraphrase of parts of the Holy Scriptures, from which the following extracts are taken, was first a herdsman, afterwards a monk in the Abbey of Streoneshah or Whitby, then ruled by S. Hild: he flourished in the 7th century. For an account of him from Ælfred's version of Beda's Ecclesiastical History, see Mr. Thorpe's preface to his edition of Cædmon, and his *Analecta Anglo-Saxonica*, pp. 54-8.

## Part of Book I. Canto II.

Her ærest ge-sceóp	Here first shaped
éce Dryhten,	<i>the eternal Lord,</i>
Helm ( <sup>2</sup> ) eal-wihta,	Chief of all creatures,
heofon and eordan,	heaven and earth,
rodor a-rárde,	<i>the firmament reared,</i>
and þis rúme ( <sup>3</sup> ) land	and this spacious land
ge-stadelode	established
strangum mihtum,	by <i>his strong powers,</i>
Fréa ( <sup>4</sup> ) ael-mihtig.	<i>the Lord almighty.</i>
Folde wæs þá gyt	<i>The earth was then yet</i>
græse un-gréne;	with grass not green;

(<sup>1</sup>) From Mr. Thorpe's edition, more literally translated.

(<sup>2</sup>) See p. 133. n. 13.

(<sup>3</sup>) Rúm wide, roomy.

(<sup>4</sup>) G. frau (noble) woman, lady is connected with fréa.

gár-secg<sup>(1)</sup> þeahte,  
sweart<sup>(2)</sup> sin-nihte,  
síde<sup>(3)</sup> and wide,  
wonne<sup>(4)</sup> wegas.  
þá wæs wuldor-torht  
heofon-weardes gást  
ofer holm<sup>(5)</sup> boren  
miclum spédum<sup>(6)</sup> :  
Metod<sup>(7)</sup> engla héht,  
lifes Brytta<sup>(8)</sup>,  
leóht ford-cuman  
ofer rúmne grund<sup>(9)</sup>.  
Raðe wæs ge-fyllid  
heáh-cyninges hæs;  
him wæs hálíg leóht  
ofer wéstenne,  
swá se Wyrhta be-beád.  
þá ge-sundrode  
sigora<sup>(10)</sup> Waldend  
ofer lago-flóde  
leóht wið þeostrum<sup>(11)</sup>,

ocean covered,  
swart in eternal night,  
far and wide,  
*the dusky ways.*  
Then was *the glory-bright*  
heaven's Guardian's spirit  
over *the deep born*  
with great speed:  
*the Creator of angels bade,*  
*life's Distributor,*  
*light come forth*  
over *the wide abyss.*  
Quickly was fulfilled  
*the high King's behest;*  
for him was holy light  
over *the waste,*  
as the Maker commanded.  
Then sundered  
*the Ruler of triumphs*  
over *the water-flood*  
light from darkness,

(<sup>1</sup>) An obscure mythological word; gár (II. 2.) *weapon, secg man, warrior.*

(<sup>2</sup>) *Black, swart, sooty; G. schwars, D. zwart.*

(<sup>3</sup>) *Sid wide.*

(<sup>4</sup>) *Won, wan wen, dark.*

(<sup>5</sup>) *Holm means also an island in the sea; Steep-holm, Born-holm, &c.*

(<sup>6</sup>) *Spéd (II. 3.) success, prosperity, speed; D. spoed.*

(<sup>7</sup>) *From metan to mete, measure: He who "measured the waters, and meted out heaven."* (<sup>8</sup>) *Bryttian to distribute.*

(<sup>9</sup>) *II. 2. ground, bottom, depth; G. grund.*

(<sup>10</sup>) *Sigor (II. 2.) — sign victory.*

(<sup>11</sup>) *Þeostru — þýstra.*

sceade <sup>(1)</sup> wið sciman <sup>(2)</sup> ;	shade from brightness;
sceóp þá búm, naman,	created then for both, names,
lifes Brytta.	life's Distributor.
Leóht wæs érest	Light was first
þurh Dryhtnes word	through the Lord's word
dæg ge-nemned;	day named;
wlítē-beorhte ge-sceaft!	beauty-bright creation!
Wel lícode	Well pleased
Fréan æt frysme <sup>(3)</sup>	the Lord at the beginning
ford-bære <sup>(4)</sup> tíd.	the teeming time.

## Part of Book I. Canto XVI.

þá tó Euan God	Then to Eve God
yrringa <sup>(5)</sup> spræc :	angrily spake :
Wend <sup>(6)</sup> þe from wynne <sup>(7)</sup> ;	Turn thee from joy ;
þú scealt wæpned-men	thou shalt to man
wesan on ge-wealde ;	be in subjection ;
mid weres egsan	with fear of thy husband
hearde ge-nearwad <sup>(8)</sup> ,	hardly straitened,
heán, þrowian <sup>(9)</sup>	abject, suffer <i>for</i>
þínra dæda ge-dwild <sup>(10)</sup> —	thy deeds' error—

<sup>(1)</sup> For *sceadwe*; *sceadu* (-o) (II. 2.) G. *schatte*.<sup>(2)</sup> Scima light, shimmer.<sup>(3)</sup> Frysme (II. 2.)<sup>(4)</sup> Lit. *forth-bearing*.<sup>(5)</sup> See p. 70—1; from *yrre* (II. 2.) *ire*, anger; L. *ira*.<sup>(6)</sup> Wendan to turn, *wend*, go; G. *wenden*.<sup>(7)</sup> Wyn (II. 3.) pleasure; G. *wonne*.<sup>(8)</sup> Ge-nearwian, from *nearu* to *make narrow, afflict, oppress*.<sup>(9)</sup> Hence *throe*.<sup>(10)</sup> II. 3. *dwelian to err*.

deádes bídán ; death abide ;  
 and þurh wóp(<sup>1</sup>) and heáf, and through weeping and  
 moan,  
 on woruld cennan(<sup>2</sup>), into the world bear,  
 þurh sár(<sup>3</sup>) micel, through much pain,  
 sunu and dóhtor. son and daughter.  
 A-beád eác Adame Announced eke to Adam  
 éce Dryhten, the eternal Lord,  
 lifes Leóht-fruma, Author of life's light,  
 lád sérende (<sup>4</sup>) : the dire errand :  
 þú scealt óðerne Thou shalt another  
 éðel(<sup>5</sup>) sécean, country seek,  
 wyn-leásran wíc, a joylesser dwelling,  
 and on wræc(<sup>6</sup>) hweorf- and into exile go,  
 an(<sup>7</sup>),  
 nacod(<sup>8</sup>), nied-wædla(<sup>9</sup>), naked, a needy beggar,  
 neorxna-wanges(<sup>10</sup>) of Paradise's  
 dúgedum be-déled : blessings deprived :  
 þe is ge-dál witod(<sup>11</sup>) to thee is a parting de-  
 lices(<sup>12</sup>) and sáwle. creed  
 of body and soul.

(1) II. 2. hence *whoop*.(2) I. 2. comp. *yeri*, L. *genere*; hence to *kindle*.(3) II. 1. *sore*.(4) III. 1. from ar *messenger*.(5) II. 2. *native country, home*.

(6) II. 3.

(7) III. 1. to turn, return, go.

(8) G. *nackt*.

(9) Nied=neód.

(10) Neorxna-wang (II. 2.) a word of doubtful etymology; wang is plain, field. (11) Witian to decide, decree; hence witod-líce.

(12) Líce (II. 1.) *corpse, dead body*; G. *leich*, D. *lijk*: hence *lich-gate* to a Churchyard, *like-wake watching a corpse*, &c.

Hwæt! þú láð-líce  
wróhte<sup>(1)</sup> on-stealdest;  
for-þón þú winnan<sup>(2)</sup>  
scealt,  
and on eordan þe  
þíne and-lifne<sup>(3)</sup>,  
selfa ge-ræcan<sup>(4)</sup>,  
wegan<sup>(5)</sup> swátig<sup>(6)</sup>  
hleor<sup>(7)</sup>,  
þínne hláf etan,  
þenden þú her leofast,  
odð-pæt þe tó heortan  
hearde gríped<sup>(8)</sup>  
adl<sup>(9)</sup> un-líde,  
þe þú on seple<sup>(10)</sup> sér  
selfa for-swulge<sup>(11)</sup> ;  
for-þón þú sweltan scealt.  
Hwæt! we nú ge-hýrad  
Lo ! thou foully  
crime didst commit;  
therefore thou shalt la-  
bour,  
and on earth to thee  
thy livelihood  
thyself obtain,  
wear a sweaty face,  
thy bread eat,  
while thou here livest,  
until thee at heart  
hardly gripeth  
ungentle ailment,  
which thou in *the apple*  
erst  
*thyself swallowedst down;*  
therefore thou shalt die.  
Lo ! we now hear

(<sup>1</sup>) Wróht (II. 3.) ; wrégan to accuse ; comp. L. crimen.

(<sup>2</sup>) Winnan (III. 1.) to battle, struggle, toil, also to win ; ge-winn labour, &c.

(<sup>3</sup>) And-lifa II. 3.

(<sup>4</sup>) I. 2. lit. reach ; G. reichen, D. reiken.

(<sup>5</sup>) II. 1. to wag, move, bear ; hence wæg wæy (weight), wág wæse, wægn wagon.

(<sup>6</sup>) Swát (II. 2.) sweat ; G. schweiss, D. zweet.

(<sup>7</sup>) II. 1. jaw, cheek ; hence countenance, complexion, O. lere.

(<sup>8</sup>) Grípan (III. 2.) G. greifen, D. grijpen.

(<sup>9</sup>) II. 3. ail, disease.

(<sup>10</sup>) ÆPl, æppel (II. 2.) G. apfel, D. appel.

(<sup>11</sup>) For-sweigan (III. 1.) to devour ; G. ver-schweigen.

hwaer ús hearm-stafas<sup>(1)</sup>  
 wraede<sup>(2)</sup> on-wócon<sup>(3)</sup>,  
 and woruld-yrmðo<sup>(4)</sup>.  
 Híe þá wuldres Weward  
 wéodum<sup>(5)</sup> gyrede,  
 Scyppend ússer,  
 hét heora sceome<sup>(6)</sup> pecc-  
 an,  
 Fréa, frum-hrægle ;  
 hét híe from-hweorfan  
 neorxna-wange  
 on nearore lif.  
 Him on laste<sup>(7)</sup> be-leác<sup>(8)</sup>  
 líðra and wynna  
 hyht-fulne<sup>(9)</sup> hám,  
 hálig engel,  
 be Fréan hásse,  
 fýrene<sup>(10)</sup> sweorde.  
 Ne mæg þær inwit-ful<sup>(11)</sup>  
 séning ge-feran,

where to us sorrow  
 in wrath up-sprang  
 and worldly misery.  
 Them then glory's Keeper  
 with weeds provided,  
 our Creator,  
 bade their shame hide,  
 the Lord, with the first  
 garment ;  
 bade them depart from  
 Paradise  
 into a narrower life.  
 Behind them locked up  
 of comforts and joys  
 the hopeful home,  
 a holy angel,  
 by his Lord's behest,  
 with fiery sword.  
 May not there guileful  
 any journey,

(<sup>1</sup>) *Hearm* (II. 2.) *grief, harm, calamity*; G. *harm*. *Stafas* (plur. of *staf*) forms the second part of several poetical compounds; as, *ende-stafas* *end*, *ár-stafas* *honour*, &c.

(<sup>2</sup>) *Wræs* II. 3.

(<sup>3</sup>) *On-wacan* (II. 3.) *to awake, arise, be born*.

(<sup>4</sup>) III. 3. from *earm* *poor*.

(<sup>5</sup>) *Wéad* (III. 1.) *weed, garment*.

(<sup>6</sup>) *Sceamu* (III. 3.) G. *sacham*.

(<sup>7</sup>) *Last* (II. 2.) *footstep*.

(<sup>8</sup>) *Be-lúcas* III. 3.

(<sup>9</sup>) *Hyht* (II. 3.) *hope*.

(<sup>10</sup>) *Fýren* *of fire*.

(<sup>11</sup>) *Iawit* (II. 1.) *deceit, treachery*.

wom-scyldig<sup>(1)</sup> mon ;      stain-guilty man,  
 ac se weard hasad      but the keeper hath  
 miht and strengðo<sup>(2)</sup>,      might and strength,  
 se þøt mære lif      who that exalted life  
 dûgedum<sup>(3)</sup> deóre,      to the good dear,  
 Dryhtne healded.      for the Lord holdeth.  
 Nô hwædre Æl-mihtig      Not however the All-  
                                     mighty  
 ealra wolde      of all would  
 Adam and Euan      Adam and Eve  
 árna<sup>(4)</sup> of-teón,      means deprive,  
 Fæder æt Frymðe,      the Father from the be-  
                             ginning,  
 þeáh he him from-      though he from them had  
       swice<sup>(5)</sup> ;      withdrawn ;  
 ac he him tó frófre let      but he to them for solace  
                             let  
 hwædre ford-wesan      nevertheless continue forth  
 hyrstedne<sup>(6)</sup> hróf<sup>(7)</sup>      the adorned roof  
 hálgum tunglum<sup>(8)</sup>,      with holy stars,  
 and him grund-welan<sup>(9)</sup>      and them earth-riches  
 ginne sealde ;      ample gave ;

(1) Wom (II. 2.) *spot, defilement.*

(2) Strengðo (-u) (III. 3.) = strengð II. 3.

(3) Dúguð (II. 3.) *virtue, benefit, nobility, chief men*; from dugan.

(4) A'r (II. 3.) *honour, wealth, &c.*; nouns of this class sometimes have a simple or weak genitive plural.

(5) Swican (III. 2.) *to cease, depart from.*

(6) Hyret (II. 3.) *ornament.*

(7) II. 2. D. *roof.*

(8) Tungel (III. 1.) *heavenly body.*

(9) Wela *weal, wealth.*

hét þám sin-híwum<sup>(1)</sup>  
 sés and eordan  
 tuddor teóndra<sup>(2)</sup>,  
 teóhha<sup>(3)</sup> ge-hwylces  
 tú woruld-nytte<sup>(4)</sup>  
 wæstmas fédan<sup>(5)</sup>.  
 Ge-séton þá æfter synne  
 sorg-fulre land,  
 eard and édel  
 un-spédigran<sup>(6)</sup>  
 fremena<sup>(7)</sup> ge-hwylcre  
 þonne se frum-stól<sup>(8)</sup> wæs  
 þe híe æfter dæde  
 of-a-drifsen wurdon.

bade the pairs  
 of sea and earth  
 producing offspring,  
 of every substance  
 to worldly use  
 fruits bring forth.  
*They occupied then after*  
*their sin*  
*a sorrowfuller land,*  
*a dwelling and home*  
*more barren*  
*of every good thing*  
*than the first seat was*  
*which they after that deed*  
*were driven from.*

(1) Sin-híwa mate, partner.

(2) Teóa to draw, pro-duce.

(3) Teóh (teóg) ILL. l. stuff, material; G. seug.

(4) Nyt (II. 3.) G. nutz, D. nut.

(5) Comp. L. fet-us, &c.

(6) Spédig wealthy.

(7) Frem (I. 3.) advantage, benefit.

(8) Stól (II. 2.) G. stuhl, D. stool; hence stool.

IV.—*Beowulf*<sup>(1)</sup>.

\* \* \* The celebrated poem from which the following extracts are taken, relates the exploits of the hero Beówulf, King of the Weder-Geúts or Angles, about the middle of the 5th century. The author is unknown, and no mention of Britain occurs; the present text is supposed to date from the 7th century.

Part of Canto V.<sup>(2)</sup>

Strát <sup>(3)</sup> wæs stán-fah,	<i>The street was variegated with stones,</i>
stíg <sup>(4)</sup> wísoðe <sup>(5)</sup>	<i>the path guided</i>
gumum set-gædere;	<i>the men together;</i>
gúð·byrne <sup>(6)</sup> scán,	<i>the war-corset shone,</i>
heard, hond-locen <sup>(7)</sup> ;	<i>hard, hand-locked;</i>
hring-íren <sup>(8)</sup> scír	<i>the ring-iron bright</i>
song in searwum <sup>(9)</sup> ,	<i>sang in their trappings,</i>
þá híe tó sele <sup>(10)</sup> furdum,	<i>when they to the hall for- ward,</i>

(1) From Mr. Kemble's edition; the translation has been adapted to read line by line.

(2) Line 637—676.

(3) II. 3. L. strata (via) G. strasse, D. straat.

(4) II. 3. G. steig, hence atígan *to go, mount.*

(5) Wírian *to show, direct, governing the dative*; G. weisen.

(6) Gúð II. 3.; byrne (I. 3.) O. birnie.

(7) Clasped, closed by the hand.

(8) Hring (II. 2.) G. ring : íren (isen) (III. 1.) G. eisen. The corset was of ring or chain mail.

(9) Searu (III. 1.) equipment, chiefly for war.

(10) II. 2. L. aula, G. saal, F. salle.

in hyra grýre-geatwum<sup>(1)</sup>, in their terrible harness,  
gangan cwomon. proceeded to go.  
 Setton sái-méde<sup>(2)</sup>  
síde scyldas,  
rondas<sup>(3)</sup> regn-hearde<sup>(4)</sup>, their sea-weariness set  
wid þæs recedes weal.  
Bugon þá tó bence, their wide shields,  
by the house wall.  
 byrnán hringdon, They turned then to a  
 gúd-searo gumena; bench,  
gáras stódon their corslets laid in a  
sé-manna searo ring,  
samod sét-gædere, the war-trapping of men:  
sesc-holt<sup>(5)</sup> úfan græg<sup>(6)</sup>: their javelins stood  
wæs se íren-þréát sea-men's arms  
wæpnum ge-wurðad. all together,  
þá þær wlone hæled<sup>(7)</sup> ash-wood above gray:  
oret-mecgas<sup>(8)</sup> the iron-crowd was  
séfster hæledum frægn: by the weapons honoured.  
Hwanon ferigead ge Then there a proud war-  
rior  
 the sons of battle  
 after the heroes asked:  
 Whence bear ye

(1) Grýre (II. 2.) *horror*; comp. G. es graust, O. it grewa. Geatwe  
(ge-tawe) (I. 3.) — *searū*. (2) G. müde.

(3) Rand (rond) *edge* (G. rand), *shield*.

(4) Regen- is an intensive prefix.

(5) Æsc (II. 3.) G. esche; bolt (II. 1.) *holt*; G. hols, D. hout.

(6) G. grau. (7) II. 2. G. held.

(8) Meog (mæg) *kins-men*, son, men, connected with mæg, and maga, and all with Mao-.

fætta scyldas,	<i>your thick shields,</i>
græge syrcan <sup>(1)</sup> ,	gray shirts,
and grim-helmas <sup>(2)</sup> ,	and visor-helms,
here-sceafta <sup>(3)</sup> heáp?	<i>your war-shafts' heap?</i>
Ic eom Hróð-gáres	I am Hróthgár's
ar and om-biht <sup>(4)</sup> :	messenger and servant:
ne seáh ic el-þeódige	never saw I foreign
þus manige men	thus many men
módig-lícran:	haughtier:
wén <sup>(5)</sup> is þæt ge for	I ween that ye for pride,
wlenco <sup>(6)</sup> ,	
nalles for wræc-síðum <sup>(7)</sup>	not for exile
ac for hyge-þrymmum <sup>(8)</sup> ,	but for magnanimity,
Hróð-gár sóhton.	have sought Hróthgár.

## Part of Canto XXII.(9)

Beó-wulf madelode ( <sup>10</sup> ), bearn Ecg-þeowes : Ge-penc nú se mæra  maga Healf-denes,	Beowulf harangued, son of Ecgtheow : Consider now thou the famous son of Healfdene,
---	---

<sup>(1)</sup> Syrce (I. 3.) S. sark; *gray shirts of iron chain-mail.*

<sup>(2)</sup> Grime (II. 2.) mask, part of the helmet covering the face.

(<sup>3</sup>) Sceaft (II. 2.) G. schaft.

(\*) Om- (am-) bihtu office; G. amt.

<sup>(5)</sup> (II. 3.) hope, expectation: wén is there is reason to suppose.

<sup>(\*)</sup> Wlenco (III. 3.) from *wlanc* proud.

<sup>(7)</sup> Wræc (II. 3.) exile, &c.; æsð journey.

(<sup>6</sup>) *Hyge* (II. 2.) *mind*, *hyegan* (*hogian*) *to think*; *brym* (II. 2.) *glo*.

<sup>(9)</sup> Line 2945—2998. <sup>(10)</sup> Međel (II. 1.) discourse, speech.

snottra (<sup>1</sup>) fengel,  
nú ic eom sídes fús,  
  
gold-wine (<sup>2</sup>) gumena,  
hweat wit geó sprécon;  
gif ic set þearfe  
þinre sceolde  
aldre linnan,  
þæt þú me á wéare

ford-ge-witenum,  
on fæder stæle (<sup>3</sup>).  
Wæs þú mund-bora (<sup>4</sup>)  
mínum mago þegnum,  
hond-ge-sellum (<sup>5</sup>),  
gif mec hild nime.  
Swylce þú þa mádmas (<sup>6</sup>)

þe þú me sealdest,  
Hrúð-gár leófa,  
Hige-láce on-send:

prudent chief,  
now I am ready to de-  
part,  
patron of men,  
what we two erst speake ;  
if I at thy need  
should  
from life cease,  
that thou to me ever  
wouldst be  
departed,  
in a father's stead.  
Be thou a protector  
to my kindred thanes,  
my near comrades,  
if me battle should take.  
Likewise do thou the  
treasures  
that thou gavest me,  
Hróthgár dear,  
to Higelác send :

(<sup>1</sup>) Snotor prudent; definite form, se being understood.

(<sup>2</sup>) Gold- implies splendour, munificence; wine (II. 2.) friend forms part of many proper names: Trum-wine, Eád-wine, Edwin, &c.

(<sup>3</sup>) Stæl (II. 2.) hence stall; G. stelle.

(<sup>4</sup>) Mund (II. 3.) protection; forming part of several proper names; as O's-mund, Sigemund (G. Siegmund) Sigismund, &c.: bora (from beran) one who bears; the second part of several compounds.

(<sup>5</sup>) Lit. hand-comrades; ge-sel (II. 2.) G. ge-selle.

(<sup>6</sup>) Máðsum, máðm, mádm treasure, gift.

mæg þonne on þám golde	may then by the gold
on-gitan	understand
Geáta dryhten,	<i>the lord of the Geáts,</i>
ge-seón sunu Hredles	Hrethl's son see
þonne he on þæt sinc	when he at the treasure
starað,	stareth,
þæt ic gum-cystum <sup>(1)</sup>	that I in <i>his</i> munificence
gódnæ funde	found <i>a</i> good
beágæ <sup>(2)</sup> bryttan ;	distributor of rings ;
breác þonne móste.	<i>I</i> enjoyed it while <i>I</i> might.
And þú Hun-ferð læt	And do thou let Hun- ferth
ealde láfe <sup>(3)</sup> ,	<i>the</i> old bequest,
wræt-líc <sup>(4)</sup> wæg-sweord <sup>(5)</sup> ,	<i>the</i> ornamented wave- sword,
wíd-cúðne man,	<i>the</i> wide-known man,
heard-ecg <sup>(6)</sup> habban.	<i>the</i> hard-edged have.
Ic me mid Hruntinge <sup>(7)</sup>	I me with Hrunting
dóm ge-wyrce,	glory will work,
odðe mec deáð nimeð.	or me death shall take.
Æster þæm wordum	After those words

(1) *Cyst* (II. 3.) *choice, excellence, the best of a thing*; from *ceósan*.

(2) *Beáh* (II. 2.) *ring*; F. *bague*: from *beógan*, *búgan* *to bow, bend*. Rings whether for the arm (*earm-beáh*), or neck (*heals-beáh*), were usual gifts from an A. S. or Scandinavian chief or prince to his followers.

(3) *Láf* (II. 3.) *leaving, relic, heir-loom, as swords often were*.

(4) *Wræt* *embossed or carved ornament*.

(5) *Wæg* (II. 3.) *wave*; G. *woge*, F. *vague*: *adorned with wavy lines as blades still are.*

(6) *Ecg* (II. 3.) *edge*; G. *ecke*.

(7) *Hrunting* was the name of Beowulf's famous sword.

Weder-Geáta leód                    *the Weder-Geáts' prince*  
 éfste mid elne<sup>(1)</sup> ,                    hastened with boldness,  
 ná-læs and-sware                    nor answer  
 bídan wolde :                        would bide :  
 brim-wylm on-feng                    *the ocean-tide received*  
 hilde-rince<sup>(2)</sup>.                      *the man of war.*

---

Part of Canto XXVII.<sup>(3)</sup>

Cwom<sup>(4)</sup> þá tó flóde                    Came then to *the flood*  
 fela módigra                            many proud  
 hæg-stealdra<sup>(5)</sup>,                        bachelors,  
 hring net<sup>(6)</sup> báeron,                    *who ring-nets bore,*  
 locene leodo-syrcan<sup>(8)</sup>.                locked limb-shirts.  
 Land-weard on-fand                        *The land-guard found out*  
 eft-síð eorla,                            *the return of the warriors,*  
 swá he sér dyde ;                        as he ere had done ;  
 nó he mid hearme                        not with insult did he  
 of hlíðes<sup>(8)</sup> nosan<sup>(9)</sup>                    from *the cape's point*  
 gæstas ne grétté,                        *the guests greet,*  
 ac him tó-geanes rád ;                    but to meet them rode ,

<sup>(1)</sup> Ellen (II. 1.) courage, valour.<sup>(2)</sup> Rinc (II. 2.) man, warrior.<sup>(3)</sup> Fela usually governs a genitive plural, while the verb often stands in the singular.<sup>(4)</sup> Hæg-steald (II. 2.) G. hage-stols ; the genitive plural in -ra seems to show that this word was originally a participle past ; and "hæg-steald man" occurs.<sup>(5)</sup> Another allusion to the rings of their mail.<sup>(6)</sup> Líð, leoð (III. 1.) G. glied, D. lid.<sup>(7)</sup> Hlið (II. 1.) lid, covering, cliff.<sup>(8)</sup> Line 3772—3835.<sup>(9)</sup> Nose I. 3.

cwæd þæt wil-cuman  
Wēdera leódum,

scalcas<sup>(1)</sup> on scír-hame<sup>(2)</sup>  
tú scipe fóron.

þá wæs on sande  
sæ-geáp naca<sup>(3)</sup>  
hladen here-wædum,  
hringed stefna<sup>(4)</sup>,

mærum and māðmum ;  
mæst hlifade

ofer Hród-gáres  
hord-ge-streónum<sup>(5)</sup> :

he þáem bát-wearde<sup>(6)</sup>  
bunden golde

swurd ge-sealde,  
þæt he síð-þán wæs

on meodu-bence<sup>(7)</sup>  
máðma þý weordre,

yrse-láfe.

Ge-wát him on nacan

quoth that welcome  
to the people of the Wed-  
ers,

men in bright mail  
to their ship went.

There was on the sand  
the sea-curved bark  
laden with war-weeds,  
the ringed vessel,

with horses and gifts ;  
the mast lifted itself  
over Hrótgár's

hoarded treasures :

he to the boat-ward  
bound with gold

a sword gave,  
so that he afterwards was  
on the mead-bench  
for the gifts the worthier,  
the heir-loom.

He departed in the ship

(<sup>1</sup>) Scealc, scalc man, servant &c.; G. schalk rogue. Mearh-scealc officer &c. having the care of the horses (mearh horse); hence mar-shal.

(<sup>2</sup>) Ham (hama) covering, here armour.

(<sup>3</sup>) Comp. G. nachen, F. nacelle.

(<sup>4</sup>) Stefn (stemn) (II. 2.) stem, prow; stefna ship having a stem: ship with the stem adorned with rings.

(<sup>5</sup>) Hord (II. 2.) hoard, treasure; ge-streón (II. 3.) acquisition, wealth &c.; streónan, strýnan to acquire, get, beget; hence strain, breed.

(<sup>6</sup>) Bút (II. 1.) G. boot.

(<sup>7</sup>) Meodo, medo (-u) (III. 2.) G. meth, D. meede.

dréfan deóp wæter;	to urge <i>the deep water</i> ;
Dena land of-geaf:	the Danes' land <i>he left</i> :
þá wæs be mæste	there was by <i>the mast</i>
mere-hrægla sum,	a certain sea-vest,
segl <sup>(1)</sup> sále-fæst <sup>(2)</sup> ;	a sail fast by <i>a rope</i> ;
sund-wudu <sup>(3)</sup> þunede <sup>(4)</sup> ;	the sea-wood thundered;
nó þær wág-flotan <sup>(5)</sup>	not there <i>the wave-floater</i> did
wind ofer ýdum	<i>the wind over the billows</i>
sídes ge-twáefde <sup>(6)</sup> ;	from its course hinder;
sæ-genga fór,	<i>the sea-goer went,</i>
fleát fámig-heals <sup>(7)</sup>	floated <i>the foamy-necked</i>
ford ofer ýde,	forth over <i>the wave</i> ,
bunden <sup>(8)</sup> stefna	<i>the bounden ship</i>
ofer brim-stréamas,	over <i>the ocean-streams</i> ,
þæt híe Geáta clifu <sup>(9)</sup>	<i>so that they the Geats'</i> <i>cliffs</i>
on-gitan meahton,	could make out,
cúde næssas <sup>(10)</sup> .	<i>the known headlands.</i>

(<sup>1</sup>) Segel (II. 2.) G. *segel*.

(<sup>2</sup>) Sál (II. 2.) *string, &c.* G. *seil*; hence *sélan* below to bind, make fast.

(<sup>3</sup>) From sund, comes sound (strait) G. *sund*.

(<sup>4</sup>) Þunian; comp. L. *tonare*; þunor (II. 2.) *thunder*; L. *tonitru*, G. *donner*, D. *donder*. Hence Þór *Thor*, the *thunderer*, (Jupiter) *Tonans*.

(<sup>5</sup>) Flota floater, ship, sailor; from fleótan (III. 3.) to float, fleet; F. *flotter*. (<sup>6</sup>) Ge-twáefan to divide, &c.; from twá.

(<sup>7</sup>) Heals (II. 2.) neck; G. *hals*.

(<sup>8</sup>) With ornaments bound or wound round the prow.

(<sup>9</sup>) Clif (III. 1.) rock, cliff; L. *clivus*, G. *klippe*, D. *klip*.

(<sup>10</sup>) Næs nose, promontory; L. *nasus*, G. *nase*: hence -næs in Dungeness and the like.

Ceól<sup>(1)</sup> úp-ge-sprang  
lyft-ge-swenced<sup>(2)</sup>,  
on lande stód.  
Hraðe wæs æt holme  
hýð-weard<sup>(3)</sup> geara,  
se-þe ér lange tíd  
leófra manna,  
fús æt faroðe,  
fær wlátode :  
sælde tó sande  
síd-fœðme<sup>(4)</sup> scip  
oncer-bendum<sup>(5)</sup> fæst,  
þý-læs hine ýð-þrym,

wudu wynsuman,  
for-wrecan<sup>(6)</sup> meahte.

*The ship up-sprang  
air-compelled,  
on the land stood.  
Quickly was at the sea  
the shore-guard ready,  
who long time ere  
the dear men's,  
ready at the strand,  
journey had watched :  
he tied to the sand  
the wide-bosomed ship  
with anchor-bands fast,  
lest it the force of the  
waves,  
the winsome wood,  
might damage.*

(<sup>1</sup>) Ceól (II. 2.) *keel, vessel* (= L. *carina*) G. *kiel*: vessels called *keels* are still in use on the Humber.

(<sup>2</sup>) Lyft (II. 3.) G. *lust*, O. *list*; *swencan to drive, urge.*

(<sup>3</sup>) Hýð (II. 3.) *haven, &c.*; hence *-hythe* in Queen-*hythe*, &c.

(<sup>4</sup>) Fæðm II. 2.

(<sup>5</sup>) Oncer, ancer (II. 2.) G. *anker*.

(<sup>6</sup>) For-wrecan (II. 1.) *to banish, injure, &c.* hence *to wreck*.

## APPENDIX.

---

 1.—*Words spelt alike, but differing in accent, pronunciation, and meaning.*


---

\*.\* This list, in addition to what is stated at p. 2, will prove the great importance of attention to the quantity of A. S. vowels, if only as a mean of distinguishing words otherwise of the same aspect, but in truth differing in every respect but spelling. Other spellings, by which some of the words may be further known from each other, are given between brackets.

---

*Ac (ah) but.*

ác (II. 3.) *oak*; G. eiche, D. eik.

a-gán *a-gone, a-go.*

ágan (*anom.*) *to own, possess, have.*

a-gen (<sup>1</sup>) (*a-(on-)gean*) *a-gain, a-against*; G. gegen, D. te-gen.

ágen *own*; G. and D. eigen.

an (*on*) *on, in*; év, L. in, G. an, D. aan (<sup>1</sup>).

an (*ann*) (*I*) *grant, from unuan.*

(<sup>1</sup>) P. *agen* or *agin.*

(<sup>2</sup>) The Dutch sometimes, as here, has lengthened a short vowel; on the whole however it will perhaps be found as safe a guide to the A. S. quantity as any modern language can be. In D. a double vowel or diphthong, in G. a diphthong, a vowel with h before or after it, or a double vowel, in general answers to an A. S. long vowel.

- án *one, a*; G. ein, D. een : L. ūn-us, eīs<sup>(1)</sup>.  
 ar (II. 2.) *messenger*.  
 ár (II. 3.) *honour*; G. ehre, D. eer.  
 aras; plur. of ar.  
 a-rás *a-rose*, from a-rísan.  
 ædre *instantly, forthwith*.  
 ædre (I. 3.) *vein*; G. and D. ader.  
 æl (II. 2.) *awl*; G. ahl, D. els.  
 æl (II. 2.) *eel*; G. and D. aal.  
 ban (ge-bann) (II. 2.) *ban, edict*; G. bann, D. ban.  
 bán (II. 1.) *bone*; G. bein, D. been.  
 bær (II.) *bare*; G. bar.  
 bær (I) *bare*; G. (ge-)bar.  
 bær (II. 3.) *bier*; G. bahre, D. baar.  
 ben (benn) (II. 3.) *wound*.  
 bén (II. 3.) *prayer*.  
 blæd (II. 2.) *fruit*; G. blatt, D. blad (*leaf, blade*).  
 blád (II. 3.) *blast*; G. blasen.  
 brid (bridd) (II. 2.) *(young) bird*.  
 bríd (brýd) (II. 3.) *bride*; G. braut, D. brijd.  
 bude; 2nd pers. imperf. of beódan *to bid*.  
 búðe; imperf. of búan *to cultivate, &c.* G. baute.  
 cneow (III. 1.) *knee*; G. and D. knie.  
 cneów (I) *knew*.  
 coc (cocc) (II. 2.) *cock*.  
 cóc (II. 2.) *cook*.  
 feol<sup>(2)</sup> (feoll) (I) *fell*; G. fiel.

<sup>(1)</sup> Here and often else, the v has evidently been dropped before e; it appears in the neut. īv, and in the oblique cases īvēg, &c. See Additions, &c.

<sup>(2)</sup> Quantity doubtful; if long, both words should be shifted to II. below.

**feól** (tyl) (II. 3.) *file*; G. feile, D. vijl. (¹)

**floc** (flocc) (II. 2.) *flock (of sheep &c.)*

**floc** (flocc) (II. 3.) *flock (of wool &c.)*; G. flocke, D. vlok.

**flóc** (II. 3.) *flat-fish, of an anchor.*

**for-** (prefix) *for-*; G. ver-.

**for** *for*; G. für, D. voor.

**fór** (II. 3.) *going, journey.*

**fór**; imperf. of faran; G. fuhr, D. voer.

**fóre** *be-before*; G. vor, D. voor, L. pro, wpo.

**fóre**; 2nd pers. imperf. of faran.

**ful** (full) (II. 1.) *cup.*

**ful** (full) *full*; G. voll, D. vol.

**fúl** *foul*; G. faul, D. vuil.

**fyl** (yll) (II. 2.) *felling, slaughter.*

**fyl** (yll) (II. 3.) *fill, glut*; G. fülle.

**fýl** (feól) (II. 3.) *file*; G. feile, D. vijl.

**fyr** *further.*

**fýr** (II. 1.) *fire*; G. feuer, D. vuur: wüp.

**geat** (III. 1.) *gate*; D. gat *hole, opening.*

**geát**; imperf. of geótan *to pour*; G. goss, D. goot.

**geoc** (II. 1.) *yoke*; G. joch, D. juk, L. jügum, ζυγόν.

**geóc** (II. 3.) *consolation.*

**geong** *young*; G. jung, D. jong.

**geóng**; imperf. of gán; G. gieng.

**God** (II. 2.) *God*; G. Gott, D. God.

**góð** *good*; G. gut, D. goed.

**heaf** (III. 1.) *ocean, deep*; G. haf-en, D. hav-en hav-en,  
F. hav-re.

**heáf** (heóf) (II. 2.) *grief.*

(¹) D. v is ~~—~~ t.

*ham ham*; D. *ham*.

*ham (hama) (II. 2.) covering, skin.*

*hám<sup>(1)</sup> (II. 2.) home, dwelling*; G. *heim*, D. *heem*.

*hama (homa, ham)*; see above.

*háma grasshopper.*

*hig (II. 1.) hay*; G. *heu*.

*hig hey! oh!*

*híg (hí) they: ol*, L. *ei*, ii.

*hof (II. 2.) court, dwelling*; G. and D. *hof*.

*hóf (I) hove*; G. *hub*, D. *hief*.

*hwæte eager, brave.*

*hwáete (II. 2.) wheat*; G. *weizen*, D. *weit*.

*hyrde (II. 2.) herd*; G. *hirt*.

*hýrde (I) heard*; G. *hörte*.

*hyre (hire) her*; G. *ihr*.

*hýre (heóre) gentle, mild*; G. (un-ge-)heuer.

*is is*; G. *ist*, D. *is*: *ɛɔrt*, L. *est*.

*ís (II. 1.) ice*; G. *eis*, D. *ijjs*.

*lam lame*; G. *lahm*, D. *lam*.

*lám (II. 2.) loam*; G. *lehm*, D. *leem*.

*leod<sup>1</sup> (lid<sup>2</sup>) (III. 1.) limb*; G. *glied*, D. *lid*.

*leóð (II. 1.) lay, song*; G. and D. *lied*.

*lim (III. 1.) limb.*

*lím (II. 2.) lime, s-lime<sup>(3)</sup>*; G. (sch-)leim, D. (s-)lijm.

*man (mann) (III. 2.) man*; G. *mann*, D. *man*.

*mán (II. 1.) sin, crime*; comp. G. *mein-eid*, D. *mijn-eed*  
*perjury, and our man-sworn.*

<sup>(1)</sup> Hence *ham-let*, and *ham (hamp-)* in local names; comp. G. *Blindheim*, D. *Gorinc-hem &c.*

<sup>(2)</sup> See p. 105, n. 9.

mæst (II. 2.) *mast*; G. *mast*.

mæst *most*; G. *meist*, D. *meest*.

men (menn) *men*; G. *männer*.

mén *necklace*, &c. L. *mon-ile*.

metan (II. 1.) *to mete, measure*; G. *messen*, D. *meetcn*

metan (I. 2.) *to paint*.

métan (I. 2.) *to meet*; D. *moeten*.

ne *not*, O. *ne*; L. *and* F. *ne*.

né (for ne-ge) *nor*; L. *nec*, G. *noch*, F. *ni*.

nid̄ (II. 2.) *man, warrior*.

nid̄ (II. 2.) *envy, malice*; G. *neid*.

sæd *sated, hence sad*; G. *satt*: comp. L. *sät-is enough*.

sæd (ge-sæd, -sægd) *said*; G. *ge-sagt*.

sæd (II. 1.) *seed*; G. *saat*, D. *zaad*<sup>(1)</sup>.

sæl (sel, sal, sele) *hall*; G. *saal*, F. *salle*: *aύλη*.

sæl (II. 2.) *time*.

sæl (sél) *good, excellent*:

spræc (I) *spake*; G. *sprach*, D. *sprak*.

spréc (II. 3.) *speech*; G. *sprache*, D. *spraak*.

syn (synn) (II. 3.) *sin*; G. *sünde*, D. *zonde*.

sýn (seón) (II. 3.) *sight*.

sýn (sín) *his, &c.*; G. *sein*, D. *zijn*.

to- (prefix) G. *zer-*<sup>(2)</sup>.

tó *to*; G. *zu*, D. *te, toe, tot*.

tó *too*; G. *zu*, D. *te*.

tol (toll) (II. 1.) *toll*; G. *zoll*, D. *tol*.

tól (II. 1.) *tool*.

uton *let us—*; L. *utin-am?*

(<sup>1</sup>) D. z often answers to A. S., E. and G. s.

(<sup>2</sup>) G. z (= u) answers to A. S., E., and D. t.

úton *without*; G. aussen, D. b-uiten.

wæg (II. 3.) *dish, wey, weight, balance*; G. wage, D. waag.

wæg (II. 2.) *wave*; G. woge, F. vague.

wende (I) *turned, went*; G. wandte, D. wende.

wénde (I) *weened*; G. wähnte, D. waunde.

werig *s spiteful*.

wérig *weary*.

westan *from the west*.

wéstan (I. 2.) *to waste, ravage*; G. ver-wüsten.

win (ge-winn) (II. 2.) *war, labour, gain*; G. ge-winn.

win (wyn) (II. 3.) *pleasure*; G. wonne.

win (II. 1.) *wine*; G. Wein, D. wijn: oīr-oç, L. vīn-um.

þa *the &c.*; G. die, D. de : rā.

þá *then, when*; G. da.

þara (þar, þær) *there*; G. dar.

þára (þára) *of the &c.*; G. der.

II.—*Words spelt and accented alike, but differing in meaning.*

Aldor (ealdor) (I) (II. 2.) *chief, prince*; hence alder-man.

aldor (ealdor) (II. 2.) *life*.

ær (II. 1.) *brass*; G. eher, erz, L. æs, ær-is.

ær *ere*; G. eher, D. eer.

æt (II. 2.) *food, eating*.

æt (I) *ate*; G. ass, D. at

æt *at*; L. ad.

(I) The A. S. has a tendency to insert e ( y) before a: hence the frequent modern pronunciation of kyart for cart and the like.

- bát (II. 1.) *boat*; G. boot.
- bát (I) *bit*; G. biss, D. beet.
- beáh (II. 2.) *ring*; F. bague.
- beáh; imperf. of búgan *to bow, bend*; G. bieg, D. boog.
- beó (I. 3.) *bee*; G. biene, D. bij.
- beó (I) *be*; G. bin, D. ben.
- beón *bees*.
- beón *to be*.
- bere (II. 2.) *bere, bar-ley*.
- bere (I) *bear*.
- bil (II. 1.) *bill, faulchion*; G. beil, D. bijl.
- bil *bill, beak*.
- blác *pale, bleak*, hence *black*; G. bleich, D. bleek.
- blác; imperf. of blícan *to shine, blink*; G. blinken.
- bóc (III. 3.) *book*; G. buch, D. boek.
- bóc; imperf. of bacan *to bake*; D. biek.
- byre (II. 2.) *son, child*.
- byre (II. 2.) *event, time*.
- byrne (I. 3.) *corslet*, O. birnié.
- byrne (birne) (I) *burn* (neut.) G. brenne.
- cin (cinn) (II. 1.) *chin*, G. kinn.
- cin (cynn) (II. 1.) *kin, race*.
- cyst (cist) (II. 3.) *chest*; P. kist, G. kiste, D. kist.
- cyst (II. 3.) *choice*; D. keus.
- cyst; 3rd pers. pres. of cyssan *to kiss*; G. küsst.
- deór (II. 1.) *animal, deer*; G. thier, D. dier.
- deór (dýr) *dear*; G. theuer, D. duur.
- ealdor; see aldur above.
- earm (II. 2.) *arm*; G. arm, L. arm-us.
- earm *poor*; G. arm.

*ēco* (II. 2.) *ache.*

*ēco* *eternal.*

*fāh* *hostile;* hence *foe.*

*fāh* *variegated, stained, discoloured.*

*feor* (II. 2.) *stratagem.*

*feor* (II. 3.) *carriage, going;* hence *fare.*

*fæsten* (III. 1.) *fastness;* G. *festa.*

*fæsten* (II. 1.) *fast;* G. *fasten.*

*fæt* (III. 1.) *vat, fat;* L. *vas,* G. *fass,* D. *vat.*

*fæt fat;* G. *fett,* D. *vet.*

*from* (*fromm*) *bold, pious;* G. *fromm.*

*from* (*fram*) *from.*

*fyllan* (II. 2.) *to fill;* G. *füllen,* D. *vullen.*

*fyllan* (II. 2.) *to fell;* G. *fällen,* D. *vellen.*

*fyrst* (*first*) (II. 3.) *period, space of time;* G. *friet.*

*fyrst* (*fyrimest*) *first, chief;* G. *fürst.*

*ge ye;* D. *gij.*

*ge both &c.*

*gif if,* O. *gif;* G. *ob.*

*gif give;* G. *gieb.*

*git* (*gyt, get, iet*) *yet.*

*git* (*gyt*) *ye two.*

*healt* *halt, lame.*

*healt* (*hylt, healdeð*) *holdeth.*

*hrán* (*hrón*) (II. 2.) *whale.*

*hrán;* imperf. of *hrínan* *to touch.*

*hund* (II. 2.) *hound, dog;* G. *hund,* D. *hond.*

*hund* (II. 1.) *hundred &c.;* D. *hond.*

*hylt* (*hilt*) (II. 1.) *hilt.*

*hylt* = *healt, healdeð;* (see above) G. *hält.*

hyrst<sup>(1)</sup> (II. 2.) *forest*.

hyrst (II. 3.) *ornament*.

in (inn) (II. 1.) *dwelling, inn*.

in (on) *in*; ēn, G. and L. *in*.

leáf (II. 1.) *leaf*; G. laub, D. loof.

leáf (II. 2.) *leave*; G. ur-laub, D. ver-lof<sup>(2)</sup>.

leán (II. 1.) *reward*; G. lohn, D. loon.

leán (II. 3.) *to reproach, blame*.

leás *false, loose*; G. loos, L. lax-us.

leás; imperf. of leósan *to lose*.

list (lyst, lust) (II. 2.) *lust, desire, pleasure*; G. lust.

list (II. 3.) *craft*; G. list.

lid (leod) (III. 1.) *limb*; G. glied, D. lid.

lid *fleet, navy*.

lid (lieged) (he) *lieth*; G. liegt.

mæg (II. 2.) *son, kin's-man*; D. maag.

mæg (I) *may*; G. and D. mag.

mægd (II. 3.) *maid*; G. magd, maid, D. meid.

mægd (II. 3.) *tribe, kindred, generation*.

mæl (II. 3.) *time &c.* G. mahl, D. maal.

mæl (III. 1.) *spot*; G. mahl, D. maal.

mæl *picture, image*.

mænan (I. 2.) *to mean*; G. meinen, D. meenen.

ménan (I. 2.) *to moan*.

mearh (mear)<sup>(3)</sup> (II. 2.) *horse*.

mearh (mearg) (II. 3.) *marrow*; G. mark, D. merg.

(1) Hence *Hurst*, *Lynd-hurst* &c.; comp. G. *Dolmen-hurst* &c.

(2) Hence *fur-lough*; or there may have been an A. S. *for-leaf*.

(3) There are traces of the E. masc. *mære* in local names and old sayings; *nicht-mære* and G. *nacht-mahr* are properly masc. answering to L. *incubus*, *incube*; G. *mähre* *mære*, answers to A. S. *myre*, D. *metrie*.

mót (ge-mót) (II. 1.) *mote, meeting.*

mót (I) *must, may*; G. *muss*, D. *moet*.

næs (nose) (II. 2.) *nose, ness, headland*; G. *nase*, D. *neus*, L. *nas-us*.

næs (ne wæs) *was not.*

næs (nas) *not.*

neát (II. 1.) *neat, nout, ox.*

neát; imperf. of neótan *to use.*

nest (II. 1.) *nest*; G. *nest*.

nest (nist, nyst) (II. 3.) *food, provision.*

ofer (ufor) (II. 2.) *shore, bank*; G. *ufer*, D. *oever*.

ofer *over*; ὑπερ, L. *super*, G. *über*, D. *over*.

odðe or, O. *other*; G. *oder*, L. *aut*.

odðe (for od-þæt) *until.*

rédan (I. 2.) *to read, guess*; G. *er-rathen*, D. *raaden*.

rádan (I. 2.) *to rede, advise*; G. *rathen*, D. *raaden*.

ríce (III. 1.) *realm, empire*; G. *reich*, D. *rijk*.

ríce *powerful, rich*; G. *reich*, D. *rijk*.

sac (II. 2.) *sack*; σακκος, L. *saccus*, G. *sack*, D. *zak*.

sac (II. 3.) *war, battle.*

sál (II. 2.) *time, occasion.*

sál (sél) *good.*

sceaft (II. 2.) *shaft, spear*; G. *schaft*.

sceaft (ge-sceaft) (II. 3.) *creature, creation.*

scír (II. 3.) *shire, division.*

scír *bright, clear, sheer*; G. *schier*.

scyld (scild) (II. 2.) *shield*; G. *schild*.

scyld (II. 3.) *debt &c.*; G. *schuld*.

segen (II. 2.) *sign, ensign*; L. *signum*.

segen (II. 3.) *saw, saying*; G. *sage*.

seld (II. 1.) *seat, throne.*

seld (seldan) *seldom*; G. selten, D. zelden.

seó *sight, pupil of the eye.*

seó the, who; G. sie, D. zij: ń, L. ea.

side (I. 3.) *side*; G. seite, D. zijde.

side (I. 3.) *silk*; G. seide, D. zijde.

side *widely.*

síð (II. 2.) *time, journey &c.*

síð *late.*

síð *since*, O. sith; G. seit.

slege (slecgæ) (II. 2.) *sledge (hammer).*

slege (III. 1.) *slaying.*

span (II. 3.) *span*; G. spanne, D. span.

span (I) *span*; G. spann.

stefn (II. 2.) *stem, prow*; G. steven, D. steeven.

stefn (stemn) (II. 3.) *voice*; G. stimme, D. stem.

stician to *stick, stab*; G. stechen } D. steeken.  
stician to *stick, cleave*; G. stecken }

treówe<sup>(1)</sup> (trýwe) *true, faithful*; G. treu, D. trouw.

treówe (trýwe, treówd) (I. 3.) *truth, troth, faith*; G. treue, D. trouw.

tyn (tin) (II. 1.) *tin*; G. zinn, D. tin, L. s-tannum.

tyn (tyne)<sup>(2)</sup> *ten*; G. zehn, D. tien.

wan (won) *dark, dusky*; hence *wan*.

(1) Treówe (adj.) and treówë or treówd (noun) with the G. and D. synonyms, never have the modern sense of our *true, truth, L. verus, veritas*, G. wahr, wahrheit, D. waar, waarheid; these are in A. S. sóð and sóð-fæstnis: sóð-fæst (used chiefly of persons) conveys both notions, as also that of *justice, veracity—“ honest and true.”* It need hardly be added that anyhow *Truth* is neither in word nor in deed “that which one breatheth.”

(2) Tyne seems rarely used except absolutely; see p. 34.

*ewelan* (II. 1.) *to die, perish; hence quail.*

*ewellan* (I. 3.) *to quell, kill; G. quälen to vex &c.*

*denn* (II. 1.) *den.*

*denu* (III. 3.) *vale, dean.*

*drincan* (III. 1.) *to drink; G. trinken, D. drinken.*

*drenca(n)* (I. 2.) *to drench, drown (act.); G. tränken, D. drenken.*

*a-drincan* (III. 1.) *to drown (neut.); G. er-trinken, D. ver-drinken.*

*faran* (II. 2.) } *to go, fare; G. fahren, D. vaaren.*

*feran* (I. 2.) }

*ferian* *to convey, carry, also go; G. führen, D. voeren.*

*feallan* (II. 2.) *to fall; G. fallen, D. vallen.*

*syllan* (I. 2.) *to fell; G. fällen, D. vellen.*

*fléogan* (fleón) (III. 3.) *to flee, fly.*

*fligan* (a-fligan) (I. 2.) *to put to flight.*

*fúlian* *to rot, grow foul; G. ver-saulen.*

*fullian* *to baptise.*

*gráetan* (greútan) (I. 2.) *to greet, weep; D. krijten.*

*grétan* (I. 2.) *to greet, salute; G. grüssen, D. groeten.*

*hangian* *to hang (neut.); G. hangen.*

*hangan* (hón) (II. 2.) *to hang (act.); G. hängen.*

*hátan* (II. 2.) *to command, call; G. heißen, D. heeten.*

*hatian* *to hate; G. hassen, D. haaten.*

*hæbban* (habban) *to have; G. haben, D. hebben.*

*hebban* (II. 3.) *to heave; G. heben, D. heffen.*

*heort* (heorot) (II. 2.) *hart; G. hirsch, D. hert.*

*heorte* (I. 3.) *heart; G. herz, D. hart.*

*hlást* (last) (II. 3.) *foot-step.*

*hlæst* (II. 1.) *last, load; G. last.*

*þe thee*; Dor. *re*, L. *te*, G. *dich*.

*þeah though*; G. *doch*.

*þeah* (*páh*) imperf. of *þeón to thrive*; G. *ge-dieg*.

---

III.—*Other words likely to be confounded by learners.*

*Æl-* for *eal*; as *æl-mihtig almighty*.

*æl-* (*el-*); as, *æl-þeódig foreign*.

*beran* (II. 1.) *to bear*.

*berian* (<sup>1</sup>) *to bare*.

*birnan* (<sup>2</sup>) (*byrnan*) (III. 1.) *to burn*, (neut.) G. *brennen*.

*bærnan* (*bernan*) (I. 2.) *to burn*, (act.) G. *brennen*.

*búgan* (*beógan*) (III. 3.) *to bow, bend*, (neut.) G. *biegen*, D. *buigen*.

*bígan* (I. 2.) *to bow, bend*, (act.)

*búgian* (= *búan*) *to inhabit &c.*

*cleófan* (*clúfan*) (III. 3.) *to cleave, split*; G. *klieben*, D. *klieven, klooven*.

*clifian* *to cleave, stick*; G. *kleben*, D. *kleeven*.

*cunnan* (anom.) *to know, be able*.

*cunnian* *to try, tempt, attempt*.

(<sup>1</sup>) The conjugation of verbs in -ian is not marked here or in the later notes above, as they can only be I. 1.

(<sup>2</sup>) Here and in the other instances below the neuter verb is complex, conj. II. or III., while the active is simple, conj. I., usually I. 2.; the latter is commonly formed from the imperf. of the former; as, *birne, barn*; *bærnan*, and the like: the E., G., and D. synonyms on the whole answer closely to the A. S. *Fall* for *fell*, *lay* for *lie*, *set* for *sit* are as wrong as *drink* for *drench*, or *drench* for *drink* would be. Comp. L. *pendere to hang*, (neut.) *pendere to hang* (act.) &c.

*cwelan* (II. 1.) *to die, perish*; hence *quail*.

*cwellan* (I. 3.) *to quell, kill*; G. quälen *to vex &c.*

*denn* (II. 1.) *den*.

*denu* (III. 3.) *vale, dean*.

*drincan* (III. 1.) *to drink*; G. trinken, D. drinken.

*drenca* (I. 2.) *to drench, drown* (act.); G. tränken, D. drenken.

*a-drincan* (III. 1.) *to drown* (neut.); G. er-trinken, D. ver-drinken.

*faran* (II. 2.) } *to go, fare*; G. fahren, D. vaaren.  
*feran* (I. 2.) }

*ferian* *to convey, carry, also go*; G. führen, D. voeren.

*feallan* (II. 2.) *to fall*; G. fallen, D. vallen.

*syllan* (I. 2.) *to fell*; G. fällen, D. vellen.

*Heógan* (fleón) (III. 3.) *to flee, fly*.

*fligan* (a-fligan) (I. 2.) *to put to flight*.

*fúlian* *to rot, grow foul*; G. ver-faulen.

*fullian* *to baptise*.

*gréatan* (greótan) (I. 2.) *to greet, weep*; D. krijten.

*grétan* (I. 2.) *to greet, salute*; G. grüssen, D. groeten.

*hangian* *to hang* (neut.); G. hangen.

*hangan* (hón) (II. 2.) *to hang* (act.); G. hängen.

*hítan* (II. 2.) *to command, call*; G. heissen, D. heeten.

*hatian* *to hate*; G. hassen, D. haaten.

*hæbban* (habban) *to have*; G. haben, D. hebben.

*hebban* (II. 3.) *to heave*; G. heben, D. heffen.

*heort* (heorot) (II. 2.) *hart*; G. hirsch, D. hert.

*heorte* (I. 3.) *heart*; G. herz, D. hart.

*hlast* (last) (II. 3.) *foot-step*.

*hlést* (II. 1.) *last, load*; G. last.

hnígan (III. 2.) *to stoop*; D. níjgen, G. neigen (act.)

hnégan (I. 2.) *to make stoop*.

hrím *rime, frost*.

rim (II. 2.) *rime, number*; G. reim, D. rijm.

hýran (I. 2.) *to hear*; G. hören, D. hooren.

hýrian *to hire*; G. heuern, D. huuren.

herian *to praise*.

hergian *to harry, ravage*; G. ver-heeren.

inc *you two*.

inca (<sup>1</sup>) *ill-will*.

irnan (yrnan) (III. 1.) *to run*; G. rinnen, D. rennen.

ærnan (ernan) (I. 2.) *to let run*.

lág (II. 3.) *law*; L. lex, lēg-is.

lagu (III. 3.) *water*; comp. L. läc-us, G. lache *lake &c.*

leán (II. 2.) *reward*; G. lohn, D. loon.

lén (II. 1.) *loan*; G. lehen.

leom (lim) (III. 1.) *limb*.

leóma *light*; L. lüm-en.

leósan (III. 3.) *to lose*; G. ver-lieren, D. ver-liezen.

losian *to be lost, escape from, perish*.

lysian (a-lýsan) (I. 2.) *to loose, re-release, re-deem*; G. er-lösen.

letan (lettan) (I. 2.) *to let, hinder*.

lætan (II. 2.) *to let, leave*; G. lassen, D. laaten.

liccian *to lick*; λειχεῖν, L. lingere, G. lecken, D. lekken.

lician *to please, like*.

licgan (II. 1.) *to lie*; G. liegen, D. liggen.

lecgan (I. 3.) *to lay*; G. legen, D. leggen.

(<sup>1</sup>) The declension of nouns in -a here, and in the later notes to the Extracts, is not marked, as they can be only I. 1.

- be-lífan (III. 2.) *to remain*; G. b-leiben, D. b-lijven.
- læfan (I. 2.) *to leave, make remain*.
- a lýfan (lýfan) (I. 2.) *to al-low*; G. er-lauben, F. al-louer.
- ge-lýfan (I. 2.) *to be-lieve*; G. g-lauben, D. ge-looven.
- lidan (III. 2.) *to go, voyage*.
- ládan (I. 2.) *to lead, make go*; G. leiten, D. leiden.
- loc (II. 2.) *lock (of hair &c.)*; D. lok.
- loca *locker, fold, place locked or shut up*.
- locu (III. 2.) *lock, fastening*; also *locker &c.*
- lutian *to lurk*; L. lät-ere.
- lútan (leótan) (III. 3.) *to lout, bow*.
- mæd (II. 1.) *math, mead*; G. mahd, matte.
- méd (II. 3.) *meed, reward*.
- medo (-u, meodo) (III. 2.) *mead*; G. meth, D. meede.
- mæg (mæcg, mecg) (II. 2. plur. magas) *son, kin's-man*.
- mæg (II. 2. plur. mægas) } *kin's-man*; D. maag.
- maga (plur. magan) } *kin's-woman*.
- mæge (I. 3.) *kin's-woman*.
- metan } See I. above.
- métan }
- mætan (I. 2.) *to paint*.
- múð (II. 2.) *mouth (of an animal)*; G. mund, D. mond.
- múða *mouth (of a river)*; G. münd-ung.
- a-rísan (III. 2.) *to a-rise*; D. rijzen.
- a-ráéran (I. 2.) *to rear*.
- sáwan (II. 2.) *to sow*; G. sähen, D. zaaijen.
- seówian (sýwian) *to sew*.

- sincan (III. 1.) *to sink* (neut.); G. sinken, D. zinken.  
 sencan (I. 2.) *to sink* (act.); G. senken, D. zenken.  
 sittan (II. 1.) *to sit*; G. sitzen, D. zitten.  
 settan (I. 2.) *to set*; G. setzen, D. zetten.  
 sīgan (III. 2.) *to sink, fall down*.  
 sēgan (I. 2.) *to throw down, subdue*.  
 springan (III. 1.) *to spring, burst* (neut.); G. springen.  
 sprengan (I. 2.) *to spring, burst* (act.); G. sprengen. (¹)  
 swefan (II. 1.) *to sleep*.  
 swebban *to put to sleep*.  
 swefnian *to dream*.  
 swincan (III. 1.) *to labour*; O. swink.  
 swencan (I. 2.) *to make labour, oppress*.  
 swindan (III. 1.) *to vanish*; G. schwinden.  
 swendan (I. 2.) *to make vanish, dissipate*; G. ver-schwenden.  
 treów (III. 1.) *tree*.  
 treówe (trywe) *true, truth*; see II. above.  
 wacan (II. 3.) (wacian) *to wake, watch* (neut.); G. wachen, D. waaken.  
 weccan (I. 2.) *to wake* (act.); G. wecken, D. wekken.  
 weder (II. 1.) *weather*; G. wetter, D. weder.  
 wæder (II. 2.) *wether*; G. widder.  
 wic (II. 1.) *dwelling*; oik-oç: see p. 103, n. 12.  
 wicg (II. 1.) *horse*.  
 wig (II. 2.) *war*.  
 windan (III. 1.) *to wind, turn* (neut.); G. and D. winden.  
 wendan (I. 3.) *to turn* (act.), *wend, go*; G. and D. wenden.

(¹) *To spring* (*a mine*), *blow up or open*.

wise (I. 3.) *wise, manner*; G. *weise*, D. *wijze*.

wisa *wise man, guide*; G. *weiser*, D. *wijzer*.

witan (anom.) *to know &c.*: see I. above.

ge-witan *to depart*.

witian *to decide*.

wíte (III. 1.) *punishment*; O. *wite*.

wita *counsellor*; hence *witena-ge-mót parliament*.

wræd *wrath, anger*.

wrâd *wroth, angry*.

þincan (I. 3.) *to seem*; G. *dünken*, D. *dunken*.

þencan (I. 3.) *to think, make seem to one-self*; G. and D. *denken*. (¹)

(¹) Comp. δοκεω *I think, seem, δοκει μει me-thinks*.

#### IV.—Additional Notes.

---

Page 1.—*Æ* is not a diphthong, but a modification of *a* in the other dialects, for which it is substituted in certain cases, as before a mute, or a consonant followed by *e*; thus *dæg*, *dæge*, but plur. *dagas*, *daguim*; so also *fæst*, *sæd*, &c.: *é* answering to Goth. *é*, is not changed.

The A. S. wrote *i* without a dot, *y* with one.

*D* probably gave rise to the O. abbreviations *ye* for *the (þ)e*, *yt* for *that (þt)*, &c.

---

Page 2.—*t* was also written for *oð tþe or, s oð t þ* for *s oð-liee truly, verily*. Examples of the use of *n* are *þā* for *þām to, the &c.*, *þēn* for *þonne then, when*.

In later times *ȝ* occurs for *g*, originally most likely a guttural, afterwards — *y*: hence the O. *ȝ* still retained in some S. names, as *Dalsell, Menzies*, pronounced *Dalyell, Menyies*.

A long vowel is sometimes written double without the accent; as, *wiid*, *good*, *gees*, for *wíid*, *góð*, *gés*, like D. *wijd* &c.; in G. also the vowel is sometimes doubled in like manner. Where A. S. vowels are made long by contraction the dropt consonant sometimes appears, sometimes not in the modern Teutonic dialects; as, (*sleahan*) *sleán*, G. *schlagen*, D. *slaan*; *gangan*, *gán*, G. *gehen*, D. *gaan*; *hangan*, *hón*, G. and D. *hangen*. *N* has been often dropt and the vowel lengthened before other consonants, above all before *s*, (Note 1.) while it remains in kindred tongues; as, *ést* (*love, favour*), Goth. *ans*; *góð*, G. *gans*, L. *ans-er*; *ós* (*god, hero*) Goth. *ans*; *saft*, G. *sanft*; *fás* (*prompt*), Goth. *funs*; *ús*, Goth. and G. *uns*, L. *nos*, &c. This seems the case in Greek too, where *ns* is in like manner avoided; as, *ðeug*, *ðeúra* (L. *dans*), *erag*, *eráea* (L. *stane*), *Σμορε*, and many other words, in some of which the circumflex, as elsewhere, marks the contraction; the *v* appears as soon as the *s* is removed: neut. *ðev*, *erav*; gen. *ðeuvrog*, *eravrog*, *Σμορεvrog* &c. In A. S. *i*, *y*, *é*, and *ú* before *ȝ*,

often answer to a cognate short vowel followed by nd, nt, or nth, in the other languages; as, líðe, (*litho, soft*) G. linde; sít (time) Goth. siðths, Dan. sínde; swið, Goth. swiðhs; hrýðer, G. riad, D. rund; ýð, L. unda; óðer, Goth. anthars, G. ander; teóðe (*tenth*), G. sehnste; óð, G. kund; gúð (*war*), Goth. guatha, O. G. kund.

In the imperfects stúd, bróhte, búahte, þóhte, n is likewise dropped, and the vowel made long, g or e in the three last becoming h, as often else; cunnan and unnan also make cúðe, úðe instead of eunde (G. konnte), unie: bohte *bought* should most likely be short, not being so contracted. Something like these changes now and then appears in L.; as, fundo, fúdi, fúsus; tundo, túsus, where the vowel in the present is long for prosodical purposes only. On the whole, though the Gr. and L. quantity sometimes agrees with the A. S., and the D. and G. very often, the Gothic is the only sure guide, or failing that, the Icelandic, or other old kindred dialects.

---

Page 4.—Sometimes too g is added before e, as geów for eów, with little or no change of sound (see p. 41); with a soft vowel before or after it, g seems to have been but lightly sounded, as y, or as a fine guttural.

---

Page 5.—Other changes are iø for eo, and ió for eó; seofon, siøfon, heó, hió: u for o, and ú for ó, especially after g's, which sometimes becomes i; geong, (*giung*) lung; geú, (*glú*) iú, ió; Iótas, Iátas *Jutes*: ie for y; gyld, gield *payment, tax &c.* U occurs mediievally for v in foreign names, as Dauid *David*; hence also for f, as lufian for lufian *to love*. Some of these spellings and those p. 5. are the variations of different times, some of different dialects, of which as yet but little is known with certainty.

---

Page 8.—A. S. d has sometimes become E. th (soft), often G. t; fæder *father*, G. vater. Ð and ȝ usually answer to G. and D. d; þreo, G. driei, D. drie; bróðer, G. bruder, D. broeder; ȝ sometimes to G. and D. t; forð, G. fort, D. voort. See also p. 2 and addition thereto. The loss of these letters in E. and the substitution of the one unmeaning combination th for both the hard and soft sound is much to be regretted. The A. S. had seemingly no rule but custom for the

use of these two letters and sounds, as we for the latter, respectively, but as þ is found oftenest at the beginning, and ȝ at the end of a syllable, they are here so printed throughout.

Page 8—9.—The following are likewise exceptions to the general rule that the A. S. gender agrees with the German:

Neut. clif	G. klippe (f.)	cliff, rock.
— lfc	G. leiche (f.)	corpse.
— sád	G. saat (f.)	seed.
— sceorp	G. schärpe (f.)	scarf.
— big-spel	G. bei-spiel (m.)	example.
— toll	G. zoll (m.)	toll.
Masc. nes	G. nase (f.)	nose, nose.
— sál	G. sell (n.)	cord.
— tear	G. nähere (f.)	tear.
— an-(ge-)weald	G. ge-walt (f.)	power.
Fem. blád	G. blatt (n.)	fruit, leaf.
— nyt	G. nutz (m.)	use.

L. has clivus masc. and clivum neut.; nasus is masc.

Page 9.—Swefen dream is fem. II. 3., and neut. III. 1.

Sceóð shoe (G. schuh masc.) is masc. II. 2. (plur. sceóðs), or fem. I. 3. (plur. sceón O. shoon), or III. 3. (plur. (ge-)scý.)

Page 10.—But few certain rules can be given for the genders, especially from the terminations, of which several, as -e, -u, -el, -en, -er, contain nouns of all three. To some of the rules given above the following are exceptions and there may be more: setl *seat*, and wered *host* are masc.; -oð and -uð are interchangeable, and when from an adjective, fem.; as, geógoð(-uð) *youth*, from geong: -ð after a consonant is fem. chiefly when from an adjective, as, strengð from *strang*; otherwise sometimes neut. as, morð *murder*, or masc. as monð (*monað*) *month*.

Compounds in -lác are neut., in -ráðen a feminine.

Nouns of the 1st declension are called Simple from the simplicity of their inflection, having but four endings for the eight cases of the two numbers, and also from the close likeness of the three genders; the 2nd and 3rd declensions are termed Complex, as having in general more

case-endings, and wider distinctions of gender. The former kind answer to the Gr. nouns making their dative plural in -σι, and the L. in -bus, the latter to the Gr. which form it in -οις or -αις, and the L. in -is. The terms Weak and Strong for Simple and Complex have greater seeming propriety when applied to other Gothic tongues, Gr. and L. for instance, than to A. S., since in the former case they in general need the help of another syllable to form their inflection, while A. S. needs only -n, and in the latter they have often the power of forming their cases without an additional syllable, than the A. S. has. Gr. and L. synonyms sometimes correspond with the A. S. in declension as well as in meaning and etymon; thus, simple: οὐρά, aur-is, eár-e; ἀνθεμός, nom-en, nám-a; hom-o, g um-a; complex: ἐπίοντας, weorc; τρυπές, burh; via, weg; vir, wer. Some nouns have both forms without a change of meaning; as, heofon, heofone Heaven, mann, manna man, þeów, þeówa slave; some with; as, múa month (animate), múða mouth (inanimate), see List III. above; lufu and lufe are sometimes used indifferently, but usually the former stands for love, affection (amor), the latter for love, sake (gratia): Godes lufu love of God; for sumes góðes lufan for the sake of some good.

---

Page 11.—The neuter is placed first in the declension of nouns, adjectives, and pronouns, as the simplest and purest form of the word, the masculine next as agreeing with it usually in three or four cases out of the five, and the feminine last as generally unlike both. The accusative stands next after the nominative as agreeing with it always in the neut., and sometimes in the masc., while in the fem. It is derived from it; the ablative next as in some words derived from the accus.; and the genitive after the dative as sometimes derived from it, and last of all, as being in neuters and masculines in general most changed from the nominative. This applies more or less to Gr., L., G. &c.: in A. S. it is more apparent in complex than in simple nouns, more still in the indefinite inflection of adjectives, and most of all in demonstrative pronouns. As regards the genders, twá, bá, and þreo are noticeable exceptions.

---

Page 13.—The plural ending -an (G. -en) became in time -en which in ox-en (ox-an) is yet rightly used; hos-en (hós-a), and P. hous-en (hús), and furz-en (fýrs-as) are wrong. To brethr-en (bróþr-u),

and *childr-en* (*cildr-u*) too it has been wrongly added; O. was *child-er* still in P. use: see p. 18, n. 3. *Chick-en* (G. *küch-en*) whence *chick* is shortened, is no more a plural than *maid-en* or *vix-en*; see p. 66.

Proper names in -a whether A. S. or foreign are thus declined; as *Gota Goth*, *Beda*, *Anna*: *Europa* follows the L. making accus. *Europam*; dat. and gen. *Europe* (the medieval form of *Europes*): *Donus Danube* (G. *Donau*; well called by Milton *Donaw*), and sometimes *Sicilia* and the like are not declined. There are no A. S. fem. names in -a; all nouns in -a being masc., those now so written end either in a consonant or in -u, (II. 3. or III. 3.); as, *Mæg-hild*, *Ead-gifu*, since latinised to *Mathilda*, *Edgina*. Other foreign names sometimes take the L. cases except the vocative; as, *Hegeseáh Simonem he saw Simon*. *Fram Decapoli from Decapolis*. *Iacobus Zebedei James (son) of Zebedee*. *Lazarus gá út! Lazarus come forth!* Masculines ending in a consonant often follow II. 2., as, *Salomon*, *Salomones*, *Salomone*; *Petrus*, *Petre*, and the like.

The now anomalous genitives in -ens of some G. simple nouns, as *herz-ens*, *nam-ens*, *will-ens*, *lieb-ens(-würdig)*, are derived from the Goth. gen., *hairt-ins*, *nam-ins* (L. nom.-inis) *wilj-ins* &c. A. S. *heort-an*, *nam-an*, *will-an*, *luf-an*. *Glaub-ens* is the only gen. of this kind which had a nom. in -en, *glauben*, (complex) Goth. *ga-láubeins*, A. S. (simple) *ge-leáfa*. *Herz-e* (Goth. *hairto*, A. S. *heorte*) is still in P. and poetical use: other G. simple nouns, as *heri* (A. S. *hearra*) have lost the final vowel. Feminines have in general lost the oblique -n in the singular, except in some phrases, as *auf orden* (*on earth*), *vor freuden* (*for joy*) &c. Many feminines and a few masculines properly complex now form the plural in -n, and in general the two orders have come to be much mixed.

---

Page 15.—Nouns in -e (II. 2.) sometimes keep the e in the plural; as, *end-eas*, *end-eum* &c.

*Freónd* and *feónd* being originally participials, derived, the former from *freógan* (G. *freien*) *to court, honour*, the latter from a lost verb akin to *fáh* *hostile* (whence *foe*), properly made the nom. and accus. sing. and plur. alike, but in time came to be inflected as II. 2.

It is only in monosyllables before one consonant that *m* is changed to *a*; otherwise not; as, *wæstm*, pl. *wæstmas* (*fraði*) *meat*, pl. *meatas*, *meatas*; thus too in adjectives; *smæl*, *þær smæle*, *smælor*, but *fæst*, *þær fæste*, *fæster* and the like.

*Fold* and *ford* originally belonged to III. 3; *fold-u*, *ford-u* like *sun-u*

---

Page 17.—*H* and *b* belongs to a lost class of complex feminines in -u: *hand-u*.

---

Page 20.—*Wædla* poor hitherto called an adjective having the definite inflection only, seems rather a noun (I. 2.) a *beggar*; *wædlian* to beg: *þearfa* poor is commonly if not always used as a noun—a poor man. *wan* a *wanting* seems indeclinable.

---

Page 24.—The comparative and superlative endings -er, -est (-oste), and -er, -est (-este) are sometimes used indifferently, but it would seem that the former oftener follow a, e, and u, the latter e, i, or y; see addit. note on p. 42

---

Page 25.—Several of these adjectives form adverbs regularly in -e and -lice (p. 70.) as *lang-e*, *lang-lice*; *strang-e*, *strang-lice*, *hræd-lice*, *heág-e*, *hcá-lice*, *cáð-e*, *cáð-lice*, *seort-lice*, *soft-e*, *yfel-e*, *lytl-e*.

---

Page 26.—*Lesser* for *less* is as wrong as *least-est* for *least* would be, or as *wors-er* for *worse* is. *Lest* is (*b y-*) *mæs*(-*b e*), *t* being added as in *against* &c. The ending -mæst has no connexion with mæst most, though it also has become -most: our *upper-most*, *after-most* &c. have arisen from the wrong notion that *most* was added to the comparative.

---

Page 27.—*Ye* is therefore the true nom., *you* the accus. &c. “If any man say ought to *you*, *ye* shall say.”

---

Page 20.—*Mine* and *thine* are therefore the older forms, from which *my* and *thy* are shortened; the former were long retained before vowels.

Page 30.—*Pissere* and *pissera* are older forms than *pisse* and *pissa*.

Page 32.—The *ā-* in *ā-wiht* &c. must not be confounded with the common prefix *a-* for on-, an- (p. 73); *ā* is ever, *aye*, *dat.*, Goth. *áiwa*, G. *je*, whence *aiwv*, Goth. *áiwa*, L. *avum*, *age*, *eternity*. *A'*- or *ág-* (p. 65) gives a general sense like G. *je*, in *je-mand* *sone* one; *ā-hwæſt* *some-*, *any-*, *every-where*, *ā-hwænne* *some time*, *any time*, P. *some-when*, *any-when*: with the negative it becomes *nú never*, *no*; *ná-hwæder* *no-whither*: *ná-wiht* is more regular than *nán-wiht*. *A'wðer* and *áðer* (if true readings) are contractions of *ā-hwæðer*, and = *ágðer*, *ág-hwæðer*: *náwðer* is *ná-hwæðer* = L. *ne-uter*; hence rightly comes O. and P. *nother*: *neither* has arisen from *either*.

Page 33.—Our *one* and *a* are both descended from *á n*; in *an* before a vowel the *n* has been restored; most languages use the same word in both senses: in A. S. *a* *m* is commoner for the article than *án*.

Page 37.—Verbs of the first conjugation are called Simple from the simplicity of their inflection, and its likeness in the three classes, or Weak as needing the help of another syllable to form their imperfect; those of the second and third are termed Complex from the various changes of vowel &c. they undergo, and the greater diversity of their classes, or Strong, as having in themselves the power of forming their imperfect. The analogy of the A. S. simple with the Gr. contracten verbs, and the L. 1st, 2nd, and 4th conjugations, and of the A. S. complex with the Gr. regulars, and L. 3rd conj. is worthy of attention. Some of the Gr. and L. synonyms agree in conjugation, as well as in meaning and etymology with the A. S.; as, simple: *c*all-ian, *καλ-ειν*, *cal-are* to call; *tem-ian*, *δαμ-ειν*, *dom-are* to tame; *lix-an*, L. *luc-ere* to shine: complex; *gra-fan*, *γραφ-ειν*; to (an-) grave, write; *brec-an*, *βρυ-ειν*, *frang-ere*, to break; *ter-an*, *τρυπ-ειν*, *ter-ere* to tear &c.; *flow-an*, *flu-ere* to flow; *drag-an*, *-ere* to draw, drag. Simple verbs are now in E. and G. usus ed . lar, complex irregular; in both my complex verbs 'e ' ; of time become simple, and this cha is s going on. : make, leap, swoop, weep, fare, wield, ' e n eye

*wreak, dive, shave, row, flow, swallow, break &c.* from A. S. complex forms have become simple : others are in a fair way to do so, retaining only a complex imperf. or part. past, some of which are either gone or going out of use ; as, *hung, have, stood, shone, clemb, glode, bet, shod, wazan, hewen, laden, graven, shapen, washen, strewen, heopen, bursten, fowghten, swollen &c.*

G. *walten* (*to rule*), *wallen* (*to boil*), *säben* (*to sow*), *kräben* (*to crow*), *kauen* (*to chew*), *wachen* (*to watch*), *wathen* (*to wade*), *resen* (*to rue*), *lachen* (*to laugh*), as also most of the E. synonyms, have become simple ; others, as *backen* (*to bake*), *hauen* (*to hew*), *sieden* (*to seethe*) &c. are in the transition state. A few E. verbs from A. S. I. 2., and I. 3. have assumed imperfects (but not participles past) of a seeming complex form ; as, *meest, met; lead, led; send, sent; build, built* ; from *métan, lédan, sendan, byldan*. A very few A. S. verbs have both forms without change of meaning ; as, *bringan; bringe, bróhte, bróht, or bringe, brang, brunnen* ; the latter however is rare.

Page 38.—Attention should be paid to the quantity of the complex or strong imperfects, both as compared with that of the present, and as to whether it is long throughout, or short throughout, or short in the first and third persons singular, and long in the 2nd, and the whole plural, or long in the first and third pers., and short in the rest. Thus II. 2. from presents some short, some long, and II. 3. from presents all short, make it long throughout, except some doubtful in the former ; as, *healde; heóld, heólde &c. drage; dróh &c.* III. 1. has the present short, and the imperf. short throughout with a change of vowel ; *binde; band, bunde, band, bunden.* II. 1. short in the pres. has the imperf. short and long ; *brece; bræce, bræc, brácon* ; except the few in *ea* ; as, *geaf, geafe &c.*, together with *eom, come &c.*, and *nam, name &c.* which are short throughout. III. 2. and III. 3. with long pres. have the imperf. long and short with a change of vowel ; *drífe; drásf, drife, dráf, drifon; clúfe; cleáf, clufe, cleáf, clufon.* Complex participles past are all short but some of II. 2.

Page 41.—Verbs in -igan (for -ian) are often conjugated regularly

Page 30.—*pissere* and *pissera* are older forms than *pisse* and *pissa*.

---

Page 32.—The *ā-* in *ā-wiht* &c. must not be confounded with the common prefix *a-* for *on-*, *an-* (p. 73); *ā* is *ever*, *aye*, *āst*, Goth. *āiw-*, G. *je*, whence *āiws*, Goth. *āiws*, L. *sevum*, *age*, *eternity*. *A'-* or *āg-* (p. 65) gives a general sense like G. *je*, i.e. *je-mand some one*; *ā-hwæſt* *some-*, *any-*, *every-where*, *ā-hwænne* *some time*, *any time*, P. *some-chen*, *any-when*: with the negative it becomes *nā never*, *no*; *nā-hwider* *no-whither*: *nā-wiht* is more regular than *nā-n-wiht*. *A'wðer* and *āðer* (if true readings) are contractions of *ā-hwæðer*, and = *āgðer*, *āg-hwæðer*: *nāwðer* is *nā-hwæðer* = L. *ne-uter*; hence rightly comes O. and P. *nother*. *neither* has arisen from *either*.

---

Page 33.—Our *one* and *a* are both descended from *ān*; in *an* before a vowel the *n* has been restored; most languages use the same word in both senses: in A. S. *sum* is commoner for the article than *ān*.

---

Page 37.—Verbs of the first conjugation are called Simple from the simplicity of their inflection, and its likeness in the three classes, or Weak as needing the help of another syllable to form their imperfect; those of the second and third are termed Complex from the various changes of vowel &c. they undergo, and the greater diversity of their classes, or Strong, as having in themselves the power of forming their imperfect. The analogy of the A. S. simple with the Gr. contracten verbs, and the L. 1st, 2nd, and 4th conjugations, and of the A. S. complex with the Gr. regulars, and L. 3rd conj. is worthy of attention. Some of the Gr. and L. synonyms agree in conjugation, as well as in meaning and etymology with the A. S.; as, simple: *eaallian*, *kal-eiv*, *cal-are* to *call*; *tem-ian*, *daμ-aεv*, *dom-are* to *tame*; *lix-an*, L. *luc-ere* to *shine*: complex; *graſ-an*, *γραφ-eiv*; to (*en-*) *grave*, *write*; *brec-an*, *þryg-eiv*, *frang-ere*, to *break*; *ter-an*, *reiþ-eiv*, *ter-ere* to *tear* &c.; *flōw-an*, *flu-ere* to *flow*; *drag-an*, *trah-ere* to *draw*, *drag*. Simple verbs are now in E. and G. usually called regular, complex irregular; in both many complex verbs have in course of time become simple, and this change is still going on. Thus *bake*, *sleep*, *leap*, *sweep*, *weep*, *fare*, *wield*, *fold*, *step*, *starve*, *creep*, *reek*, *lys*

has hái-háit, lái-láik, rái-ród from háitan &c. Some only alter the vowel, as *sceape*, *sceóp*, where the Goth. has sái-akáp.

---

Page 54.—Verbs in -án form their part. pres. in -ánde; *sleán*, *steánde*.

---

Page 58.—*Writan* is an exception to the general rule that complex verbs change ȝ into d in the 2nd pers. sing., and in the plural of the imperf., and in the past part.: see *cweðan* p. 50, *worðan* p. 57, and *seððan* p. 60, which are all regular.

---

Page 62.—Complex participles past sometimes agree like adjectives with a noun, sometimes do not; as, *Dá þing þe him ge-sende wéron the things that were sent him.* *Seó óþre naman wæs Tate háten who by another name was knight Tate.*

The part. past in the pluperfect is sometimes governed in the accus. by the auxiliary *hæbban*; as, *Dá híg hæfdon hyra lef-sang ge-sungenne when they had sung their song of praise.*

---

Page 63.—Un- sometimes, as in G., is not merely negative, but implies badness; *un-peáw* *bad habit*, *un-weder* (G. *un-ge-witter*) *storm, bad weather.*

The prefix *to-* must be carefully distinguished from the preposition *tó* in composition; as, *to-gán* *to go asunder, separate*, *tó-gán* *to go to*; G. *zer-gehen*, *zu-gehen*: *to-* implies *division, dispersion of parts*, and hence often *destruction*.

---

Page 64.—*For-* gives in general a negative or bad sense, or is intensive, much like *kara-*; *démán* *to judge*, *for-démán* *to condemn*, *kriweiw*, *kara-kriweiw*, G. *ur-theilen*, *ver-urtheilen*; *bernan* *to burn*, *for-bernan* *to burn up, consume*, *kauiw*, *kara-kauiw*, G. *brennen*, *ver-brennen*; *dón* *to do, make*, *for-dón* *to un-do, ruin, destroy*; *scyppan* *to form*, *for-scyppan* *to transform, de-form*; *for-fela* *very many*. This prefix must not be confounded with the prepositions *for* and *fore*; (probably of the same origin, — L. *pro*); thus *for-seón* is *to over-look, de-spise*, G. *ver-sehen*; *for-seón*, *fore-seón* *to fore-see*, G. *vor-sehen*; *for-gán* *to for-go, do without*,

*perish*, G. ver-gehen, L. per-ire; *fore-gán* to *fore-go*, go before, G. vor-gehen, L. prae-ire. It is as wrong to write *fore-go* for *for-go*, as *fore-give* for *for-give*.

'And- answers closely to *dvri-*, denoting opposition, reciprocity &c.; and-saca *denier*; and-wyrdan, and-swarian, *dvri-spau* to answer; and-wlitan, *dvri ßlæwean*, to gaze at, look in the face.

The prefix *ge-* is in A. S. used oftener and more indiscriminately than in any kindred language old or new. Though originally conveying no notion of past time, it seems gradually to have acquired it, and to have become a kind of syllabic augment to imperfects, but especially to participles past, as in Dutch and German. In the formation of English it was by degrees dropt before all but participles past, where it first became *i-* or *y-*, and has since been lost altogether, surviving only as *a-* in some P. words. In G. and D. it is still in use before nouns, adjectives &c., but in general with a distinct effect on their meaning, referrible to its original collective force. A. S. *ge-* sometimes denotes the result of doing a thing; as, *Ge-slóh þín funder fáhða mæste* thy father by striking avenged the greatest of feuds. His fearh *ge-saran* oððe *ge-irnan* to save his life by going or running (*to a sanctuary*).

Page 65.—The prefix *or-* (left out in the right place) denotes want of a thing; as, *or-mæste* *im-mense*, measure-less, *or-trúwian* to despair, *or-sorh* care-less, se-cure: it must not be confounded with *or-* in *or-eald* very old, (G. *ur-alt*), from *or*, *ord* beginning, point, connected with L. *or-ior*, *or-igo* &c.

The ending *-el*, *-ol*, answers sometimes to L. *-ul-um*; *gyrd-el*, L. *cing-alum*, *girdle*.

The primary meaning of *-ing* is *young*, and hence it forms patronymics, and terms of contempt &c.: *-ling* has been supposed to be derived from *-ing*.

Page 66.—Other feminines in *-en* are *menn-en* from man, G. *mann*, *männin*; *gyd-en* from god, G. *gott*, *gött-in*, D. god, god-in: *in-e*; *fyl-e*, *filly*, from *sol-a* *foal*; *wal-e* from wealth or *wal-a*, *Celt*, stranger; *webb-e* (or *webb-estre* web-star); from *webba* weaver.

The ending *-estre* (like D. *-ster*) is feminine only, and the notion of thus forming nouns of contempt &c., as *pun-ster*, *trick-ster*, *road-ster* is modern.

The ending *dóm* is properly a noun (II. 2.) *deem, judgment, authority, dignity*: *hád* is also a noun (II. 2.) *state, condition, rank, Holy Orders*.

Page 67.—*scípe* (not occurring alone) is related to *scapan*, (*secapan*), *to shape, form, create*, and denotes *form, mode, condition; land-scape, or land-skip, (land-scope)* G. *land-schaft*, D. *land-schap*, should in rule be *land-skip*, unless borrowed, like a few other words, directly from the Dutch.

The adjective ending *-ig* answers to *ix-eg*, L. *-ic-us*.

Page 68.—A. S. *-isc* had often a bad sense, which E., G., and D. *-ish*, *-isch*, *-sch* almost always have, except when added to local names; the three former often contrast with *-líc*, *-līk* or *-ly*, G. *-lich*, which convey a good or indifferent notion; as, *fōlc-isc vulgar* (Chaucer has *pepl-ish*), *fōlc-líc popular*; *cild-isc child-ish*, G. *kind-isch*, *cild-líc child-līk*, G. *kind-lich*; compare also *mānn-isc*, *mān-līk*, *mān-ly*, G. *männ-isch*, *männ-lich*; *woman-isc*, *woman-ly*, G. *weib-isch*, *weib-lich*; *girl-isc*, *maiden-ly* &c.

While *-ol* (-ul) answers in form to L. *-ul-us*, in sense it is more like *-ax*, commonly denoting a wrong propensity; as, *sprec-ol*, *cwid-ol*, L. *loqu-ax*, *dic-ax talkative, evil-tongued*; *et-ol*, L. *ed-ax greedy*. Sometimes as in *só ȝ-ag-ol truth-telling, deþ-p þanc-ol deep-thinking*, it expresses a good quality.

*-en* (G. *-ern*, *-en*) usually denotes the material of which a thing is made; as, *stán-en* of *stone*, G. *stein-ern*; *treó w-en* *treen, wood-en*; *gyld-en* *gold-en*, G. *gold-en*; *lin-en* *lin-en*, of *lin* or *flax*, G. *lein-en*; from *stán*, *treów*, *gold*, *lin*. Several words thus formed are now obsolete; *ston-en*, *brick-en* &c. are still in P. use.

*-cund* answers to L. *-cund-us*.

Some adjectives are formed in *-ed* or *-d* like simple participles past, as, *ge-hyrned* *horn-ed*, (G. *ge-hörn-t*); *ge-sceóð* *shod* (G. *ge-schuh-t*); the rest of the verb, if any, is here wanting.

Page 69.—*-e-, -n-, -s-*, in these and the like verbs represent lost syllables; therefore *swin-s-i-an* (*to make melody*) is no exception to the rule against *ns* in the same syllable; see p. 2. n. 1.

The verbal endings *-ian* and *-an* (*-as*, G. and D. *-an*) became in time *-en* and *-e*, the latter of which has in many cases been dropt, in all has lost its sound. Such verbs as *whit-en*, *black-en* are of modern use, *to white* and the like being the older form.

<sup>1</sup> Page 71.—Other adverbs in common use are: *ā eye, always, æfre* (G. and D. *immer*) *ever, næfre* (G. and D. *nimmer*) *never, ædre* *straightway, recene* *instantly, eft-sona* *eft-soon, forth-with, endemēs at length, þær-rihte* (*forð-rihte*) *forthwith, elles else, otherwise, elles-hwider else-whither, ellor elsewhere, þus* (D. *dus*) *thus, georne* (G. *gerne*) *earnestly, willingly, þearle very, exceedingly, geara well, accurately,* (*lyt-)**hwon a little* (S. *a wheen*), *hagu* (*hwegu*), *hwæt-(hwylc)-hagu &c.* *somewhat, a little, þances gratis, ágnes þances of one's own accord, his &c. willan, unwillan with, against his &c. will, semninga suddenly, hrædinga quickly, áninga* (*áninga*) *alone, only, on bæc-ling backward.* *Sona þws soon after that.* *Sona þws wintres early in the winter.*

Page 72.—It seems likely that the first part of the word *Oxena-ford* is not from *oxa ox*, but from the Celtic root meaning water, river, (A. S. *wos* is *ocean, liquid*) which appears in ( ) Ex, Ax, Usk, Esk, Oise, Aisne, Yssel, Oxus, and so on of rivers; and this is confirmed by *Owen-ey* the n Bourboud. *Ford of oxen* is however the strict meaning of the A. S., and doubtless the one then attached to it; *Beg-wrofoc, Schi -i Swin-ford* and the like supply fair analogies.

*Ofer-* sometimes conveys the same idea as *for-*; *ofer-gitan* (= *fer-gitan*) *to forget, ofer-hyegan* = *for-hyegan* *to despise.*

*Of-* beside its intensive force (p. 105. n. 2.) sometimes has a bad one; as, *me þineð me thinks, me ofþineð if repenteð me, I take it ill.*

Page 73.—Our prefix *a-* has in general sprung from the A. S. *on-* (*an-*, *a-*), and *on* is still sometimes used for it; as, *a-float*, A. S. *on-floote*; *a-live*, A. S. *on-life* (G. *am leben*); *a-two* (*in-two*), A. S. *on-twā*; *a-fearcd*, A. S. *a-fered*; O. *on floote, on life, on two, also on sleep, on row &c. now a-sleep &c.; we yet say on board, or a-board, on fire, or a-fire and the like*: see also p. 60—71, 73.

In some words *a-* is from A. S. *of-*; as, *of-dúne* (*a-dúne*, *a-dún*) *a-down, down* (= G. *berg-ab*); *of-hyrst a-thirst*; we say *too of him* or *a-hin*; it is therefore not unlikely that in other cases A. S. *a-* may, as the sense would imply, have sprung from *of-*; thus *a-faran to depart, a-wendan to turn away, a-weorpan to cast off*, answer to G. *ab-fahren*, and G. and D. *ab-wenden*, *af-wenden*, *ab-werfen*, *af-werpen*: so *áwo, áw'* became L. *ab*, and that in time *a*. Once or twice E. *a-* is from A. S. *ge-*; as *ge-líc* (O. *y-like*), *a-like*; *ge-mang* (O. *e-mong*), *a-mong*.

Page 77.—Adjectives also take an abl. or dat. of the cause &c., which commonly stands first; as, *I ú-déndum fáh stained with (my) former deeds. Wundum wérig weary with wounds.*

Likewise of the person &c. by whom the action implied is done; as, *Hil freóndum or-wéne despaired of by his friends. Warðfull þám cýningum to be honoured by kings. Un-a-secgend-líc ánígum unspeakable by any.*

Adjectives in general govern the object to which they have relation in the dative; as, *Ic eom ge-trýwe mínon hláf-orde I am true to my lord. He wæs me yrre he was angry with me. Dryhten wæs þám folce gram (the) Lord was wroth with the people.*

Adjectives denoting nearness also govern the dative; as, *A'n bís oþ þe him þá hendest wæs a bishop that was then nearest (handed) to him.*

Some adverbs take the same case as the adjectives whence they are formed: *Nánig him ge-líce þat dón meahte none could do that like him.*

Page 79.—The following verbs also govern the dative of the far ob-

ject: *seegan to say, tell, bodian to preach, announce, beōdan to offer, and-wyrdan, and-awarian to answer, gifan to give, for-gifan to give away, forgive, syllan to give, sell (of which examples need not be given), wið-metan to compare, measure with, ge-an-lícian to liken, make like; yrsian to be angry with, mi-filhan to approach, apply to, wissian (wissian) to guide, direct, fore-wesan (L. prae-esse) to govern, be over, be-sárgian to pity, be sorry for, have a dative of the near object; losian to be lost, escape from, one of the person affected; as, Híre fær is wið-meten fyrd-lícum truman her going is compared to an army on the march. Ic eom ysium and axum ge-an-lícod I am made like cinders and ashes. Se-he yrsat̄ his bréðer he that is angry with his brother. Nô ic him þas georne mi-fealh I did not therefore willingly approach him. Þust hig mihton þám felice wel wissian that they might guide the people well. Mid-hý heó þá feala geara piſsum mynstre fore-wæs when she then many years had ruled this convent. Dá be-sárgeda he þáre sorb-fullan méder then pitied he the sorrowful mother. Him losade án seeáp he had lost one sheep.*

Some of the verbs having a dative &c. of the object to which the action is directed, govern the thing done in the accusative; as, *Démāð rihtne dóm judge right judgment.*

Page 81.—The following verbs are sometimes used in the usual reflexive way with the pronoun in the accusative: *ge-biddan to warnian to beware, belgan to be angry, ge-wratiian to be as, Denne þú þe ge-bidde when thou prayest. Warniat̄ wið þa bōec be aware of the scribes. Dá bealh he hine then was he an Ge belgat̄ wið me ye are angry with me. Dá ge-wrat̄ hine se arce-biscep Landfranc then was the archb Langfranc wrath.*

Likewise some compounds of *scón*; as, *Hine &c. fer- (G. sich ver-sehen) to err, commit an oversight, sin. Gif he under-bane be-sáwe if he should look back.*

Page 81.—*S.*—Wealdan, on-fón, éhtan, bidan, and earnian sometimes govern the accusative.

---

Page 83.—On-bracián to dread, feel horror at governs the genitive like on-drædan; as, An-braciende þær un-ge-limpes feeling horror at the misfortune.

---

Page 87.—Be and tó sometimes govern the ablative; as, Be þý meag wele mon witan by that may each man know. Tó-þý-þat (= tó-bón-þat) in order that. Tó-hwylc why?

As set is sometimes to, so is tó sometimes of; the two are now and then confounded in E., and G. zu stands for both. Tó and of (the latter in composition often) sometimes mean from, the former especially with willian and sécan; as, Ealle tó he wites wil-niæt all from thee desire food. Manna ge-hwylc se-he séceð tó him every man that seeketh from him. He þær ful ge-beah set Wealh-þeón he took the cup from (at the hand of) Wealh-theb.

Tó meaning motion to, has sometimes, though seldom, an accusative: He fór tó Samariam þær land he went to the land of Samaria.

---

Page 88.—Tó-emnes (a rare word) rather by, along-side, over-against than along, is from efen (efn, emn) even, equal; on-efn (-emn) is the same; Hilm on-efna ligeð saldor-g-e-winna by him lieth (his) deadly foe. Emn-, em- are common in composition; emn-lang (G. eben (so) lang) of the same length; em-leóf (G. eben (so) lieb) equally dear; em-peów fellow-slave.

---

Page 90.—In non, úton, and úppon should not be divided, -on (-an) being here only an ending and not the preposition on, serving in the two last to change the adverb into a preposition.

---

Page 93.—Pend en while sometimes has a subjunctive; as, Pend en hit hæt sý while it be hot.

Page 96.—*For-standan* (or *fore-standan*) *to defend, stand before*, likewise *for-standan* (G. *ver-stehen*) *to understand govern the accusative; as, Hine God for-stód him God defended.*

Page 96.—Other conjunctions are *swá-same-ew& the same as—, in like manner as—, númer þest án ac— not (that) only but—, nates-hwón by no means, nóht-pón-læs never-(nought)-theless, gea yen, ná nay, gese yes, nese no, nnes (nas) not, huru moreover, chiefly, huru-bíng a at least, þæs-he since, after that, because, for-hwón, tó-hwón (= for-hwý) hwy, þæs(-for) for that, therefore, gen, gena yet.*

Comp. *oðr̄ iþoperū si μη—we have (not) but—*, one only of the many instances of likeness between the Gr. and A. S. syntax.

*Weorðe* too may be either expressed or understood; as, *Wú (weorðe) þám men! wo worth the man!*

Page 97.—*Lo!* has no more to do with *look* than O. *gif* has with *gifian*: our vulgar *law!* and *look!* may also be derived from *lā!*

Page 98.—Which Latin translation the A. S. versions of the Holy Scripture are taken from is hard to say; this only is certain that the A. S. Gospels follow the Vulgate more closely than the Heptateuch does. The Latin MSS. doubtless varied much, and the A. S. is now and then seemingly not an accurate rendering of any one. Ælfric was a common name; among those who bore it, were an Archbishop of Canterbury, and one of York, of whom the latter is believed to have translated the parts of the O. Testament known as the Heptateuch.

Page 133.—*Teóhhian* (from *teóh*, p. 152. n. 3.) means also *to furnish, provide, fit out*, and perhaps should be so rendered in the extract from Boëthius, where its meaning is not very clear.

Page 140.—*Tó-* in *tó-geanes* sometimes does not rime (see p. 158, last line) though seemingly always in other combinations: *to-* on the other hand never rimes.

# VALUABLE AND INTERESTING BOOKS,

PUBLISHED OR SOLD BY

JOHN RUSSELL SMITH,  
36, SOHO SQUARE, LONDON.

A Compendious Anglo-Saxon and English Dictionary, by the Rev. JOSEPH BOSWORTH, D.D., Anglo-Saxon Professor in the University of Oxford, &c. 8vo. closely printed in treble column, cloth, 12s

This may be considered quite a new work from the author's former Dictionary: it has been entirely remodelled and enlarged, bringing it down to the present state of Anglo-Saxon literature both at home and abroad.

Anglo-Saxon Delectus; serving as a first Class-Book to the Language. By the Rev. W. BARNEs, B.D. of St. John's Coll. Camb. 12mo. cloth, 2s 6d

"To those who wish to possess a critical knowledge of their own Native English, some acquaintance with Anglo-Saxon is indispensable; and we have never seen an introduction better calculated to supply the wants of a beginner in a short space of time. The declensions and conjugations are well stated, and illustrated by references to the Greek, Latin, French and other languages. A philosophical spirit pervades every part. The Delectus consists of short pieces on various subjects, with extracts from Anglo-Saxon History and the Saxon Chronicle. There is a good Glossary at the end."—*Athenaeum*, Oct. 20, 1849.

The Anglo-Saxon Version of the Life of St. Guthlac, Hermit of Croyland. Printed for the first time, from a MS. in the Cottonian Library, with a Translation and Notes, by CHARLES WYCLIFFE GOODWIN, M.A., Fellow of Catherine Hall, Cambridge, 12mo. cloth, 5s

An Introduction to Anglo-Saxon Reading; comprising Ælfric's Homily on the Birthday of St. Gregory, with a copious Glossary, &c. by L. Langley, F.L.S. 12mo. cloth, 2s 6d

Ælfric's Homily is remarkable for beauty of composition, and interesting as setting forth Augustine's mission to the "Land of the Angles."

Analecta Anglo-Saxonica.—Selections, in Prose and Verse, from Anglo-Saxon Literature, with an Introductory Ethnological Essay, and Notes, Critical and Explanatory, by LOUIS F. KURTSTEIN, of the University of Giessen, 2 thick vols. post 8vo. cloth, 12s (original price, 18s)

Containing an immense body of information on a language which is now becoming more fully appreciated, and which contains fifteen-twentieths of what we daily think, and speak, and write. No Englishman, therefore, altogether ignorant of Anglo-Saxon, can have a thorough knowledge of his own mother-tongue; while the language itself, to say nothing of the many valuable and interesting works preserved in it, may, in copiousness of words strength of expression, and grammatical precision, vie with the modern German.

Anglo-Saxon Version of the Hexameron of St Basil, and the Anglo-Saxon Remains of St. Basil's Admonitio ad Filium Spiritualem; now first printed from MSS. in the Bodleian Library, with a Translation and Notes, by the Rev. H. W. NORMAN, 8vo. SECOND EDITION, enlarged, 4s

**Anglo-Saxon Version of the Holy Gospels.** Edited from the original MSS. by BENJAMIN THORPE, F.S.A., post 8vo. cloth, 8s (original price, 12s)

**Anglo-Saxon Version of the Story of Apollonius of Tyre;**—upon which is founded the Play of Pericles, attributed to Shakespeare;—from a MS., with a Translation and Glossary, by BENJAMIN THORPE, 12mo. cloth, 4s 6d (original price, 6s)

**Analecta Anglo-Saxonica.—A Selection in Prose and Verse,** from Anglo-Saxon Authors of various ages, with a Glossary, by BENJAMIN THORPE, F.S.A. a new edition, with corrections and improvements, post 8vo. cloth, 8s (original price, 12s)

**Popular Treatises on Science,** written during the Middle Ages, in Anglo-Saxon, Anglo-Norman, and English. Edited by THOS. WRIGHT, M.A., 8vo. cloth, 3s

*Contents:—An Anglo-Saxon Treatise on Astronomy, of the Tenth Century, now first published from a MS. in the British Museum, with a Translation; Livre des Creatures, by Phillippe de Thaun, now first printed with a translation, (extremely valuable to Philologists, as being the earliest specimens of Anglo-Norman remaining, and explanatory of all the symbolical signs in early sculpture and painting); the Bestiary of Phillippe de Thaun, with a translation; Fragments on Popular Science from the Early English Metrical Lives of the Saints, (the earliest pieces of the kind in the English language.)*

**Fragment of Ælfric's Anglo-Saxon Grammar,** Ælfric's Glossary, and a Poem on the Soul and Body of the XIIth Century, discovered among the Archives of Worcester Cathedral, by Sir THOMAS PHILLIPS, Bart., folio, PRIVATELY PRINTED, sewed, 1s 6d

**A Philological Grammar,** grounded upon English, and formed from a comparison of more than Sixty Languages. Being an Introduction to the Science of Grammars of all Languages, especially English, Latin, and Greek, by the Rev. W. BARNES, B.D., of St. John's College, Cambridge, author of "Poems in the Dorset Dialect," "Anglo-Saxon Delectus," &c. &c. pp. 322, cloth, 9s

**Biographia Britannica Literaria, or Biography of Literary Characters of Great Britain and Ireland, ANGLO SAXON PERIOD,** by THOMAS WRIGHT, M.A., F.S.A., &c., Membre de l'Institut de France, thick 8vo. cloth, 6s (original price, 12s)

THE ANGLO-NORMAN PERIOD, thick 8vo. cloth, 6s (original price, 12s)

Published under the superintendence of the Council of the Royal Society of Literature  
There is no work in the English Language which gives the reader such a comprehensive and connected History of the Literature of these periods.

**Philological Proofs of the Original Unity and Recent Origin of the Human Race,** derived from a Comparison of the Languages of Europe, Asia, Africa, and America, by A. J. JONES, 8vo cloth, 6s (original price, 12s 6d)

Printed at the suggestion of Dr. Pritchard, to whose works it will be found a supplement.

**Essays on the Literature, Popular Superstitions,  
and History of England in the MIDDLE AGES, by THOMAS WRIGHT,  
M.A., F.S.A., 2 vols. post 8vo. elegantly printed, cloth, 16s**

**Contents:**—Essay I. Anglo-Saxon Poetry. II. Anglo-Norman Poetry. III. Chansons de Geste, or Historical Romances of the Middle Ages. IV. On Proverbs and Popular Sayings. V. On the Anglo-Latin Poets of the Twelfth Century. VI. Abelard and the Scholastic Philosophy. VII. On Dr. Grim's German Mythology. VIII. On the National Fairy Mythology of England. IX. On the Popular Superstitions of Modern Greece, and their connection with the English. X. On Friar Rush, and the Frolicsome Elvea. XI. On Dunlop's History of Fiction. XII. On the History and Transmission of Popular Stories. XIII. On the Poetry of History. XIV. Adventures of Hereward the Saxon. XV. The Story of Eustace the Monk. XVI. The History of Fulke Fitzwarine. XVII. On the Popular Cycle of Robin-Hood Ballads. XVIII. On the Conquest of Ireland by the Anglo-Normans. XIX. On Old English Political Songs. XX. On the Scottish Poet Daubar.

**Literature of the Troubadours. Histoire de la  
Poésie Provençale, par M. FAURIET, publié par J. MOUL, Membre de  
l'Institut de France, 3 vols. 8vo. new, sewed, 14s (original price, £1. 4s)**

A valuable work, and forms a fit companion to the Literary Histories of Hallam, Ticknor, and Ginguené. J. R. S. is the only agent in London for the sale of it, at the above moderate price.

**Skelton's (John, Poet Laureat to Henry VIII.) Poetical Works: the Bowge of Court, Colin Clout, Why come ye not to Court? (his celebrated Satire on Wolsey), Philip Sparrow, Elinour Rummyng, &c.; with Notes and Life, by the Rev. A. DYCE, 2 vols. 8vo. cloth, 16s (original price, £1. 12s)**

"The power, the strangeness, the volubility of his language, the audacity of his satire, and the perfect originality of his manner, made Skelton one of the most extraordinary writers of any age or country."—*Southey*.

"Skelton is a curious, able, and remarkable writer, with strong sense, a vein of humour, and some imagination; he had a wonderful command of the English language, and one who was styled, in his turn, by a great scholar as ever lived (Erasmus), 'the light and ornament of Britain.' He indulged very freely in his writings in censures on monks and Dominicanæ: and, moreover, had the hardihood to reflect, in no very mild terms, on the manners and life of Cardinal Wolsey. We cannot help considering Skelton as an ornament of his own time, and a benefactor to those who come after him."

**A New Life of Shakespeare, including many particulars respecting the Poet and his Family, never before published, by J. O. HALLIWELL, F.R.S., in one handsome vol., 8vo. illustrated with 76 engravings on wood, of objects, most of which are new, from drawings by FAIRHOLT, cloth, 15s**

This work contains upwards of forty documents respecting Shakespeare and his Family, never before published, besides numerous others indirectly illustrating the Poet's Biography. All the anecdotes and traditions concerning Shakespeare are here, for the first time collected, and much new light is thrown on his personal history, by papers exhibiting him as selling Malt and Stone, &c. Of the seventy-six engravings which illustrate the volume, more than fifty have never before been engraved.

It is the only Life of Shakespeare to be bought separately from his Works.

**Archæological Index to Remains of Antiquity of the Celtic, Romano-British, and Anglo-Saxon Periods, by JOHN YONGE AKERMAN, Fellow and Secretary to the Society of Antiquaries, 8vo. illustrated with numerous engravings, comprising upwards of five hundred objects, cloth, 15s**

"One of the first wants of an incipient Antiquary, is the facility of comparison, and here it is furnished him at one glance. The plates, indeed, form the most valuable part of the book, both by their number and the judicious selection of types and examples which they contain. It is a book which we can, on this account, safely and warmly recommend to all who are interested in the antiquities of their native land."—*Literary Gazette*.

**Ancient Coins of Cities and Princes, geographically arranged and described, HISPANIA, GALLIA, BRITANNIA, by J. Y. AKERMAN, F.S.A., 8vo. with engravings of many hundred coins from actual examples, cloth, 10s**

**Introduction to the Study of Ancient and Modern Coins, by J. Y. AKERMAN, Secretary of the Society of Antiquaries, scap. 8vo. with numerous wood engravings from the original coins, (an excellent introductory book), cloth, 6s 6d**

**CONTENTS:** Sect. 1. Origin of Coinage.—Greek Regal Coins. 2. Greek Civic Coins. 3. Greek Imperial Coins. 4. Origin of Roman Coinage—Consular Coins. 5. Roman Imperial Coins. 6. Roman British Coins. 7. Ancient British Coinage. 8. Anglo-Saxon Coinage. 9. English Coinage from the Conquest. 10. Scotch Coinage. 11. Coinage of Ireland. 12. Anglo-Gallic Coins. 13. Continental Money in the Middle Ages. 14. Various representations of Coinage. 15. Forgeries in Ancient and Modern Times. 16. Table of Prices of English Coins realized at Public Sales.

**Tradesmen's Tokens struck in London and its Vicinity, from 1648 to 1671, described from the originals in the British Museum, &c. by J. Y. AKERMAN, F.S.A., 8vo. with 8 plates of numerous examples, cloth, 15s—LARGE PAPER, in 4to. cloth, £1. 1s**

This work comprises a list of nearly three thousand Tokens, and contains occasional illustrative topographical and antiquarian notes on persons, places, streets, old tavern and coffee-house signs, &c. &c. with an introductory account of the causes which led to the adoption of such a currency.

**Coins of the Romans relating to Britain, described and illustrated, by J. Y. AKERMAN, F.S.A. SECOND EDITION, greatly enlarged, 8vo. with plates and woodcuts, 10s 6d**

The "Prix de Numismatique" was awarded by the French Institute to the author for this work.

"Mr. Akerman's volume contains a notice of every known variety, with copious illustrations, and is published at a very moderate price; it should be consulted, not merely for these particular coins, but also for facts most valuable to all who are interested in the Romano-British History."—*Archæological Journal*.

**Numismatic Illustrations of the Narrative Portions of the New Testament, by J. Y. AKERMAN, 8vo. numerous woodcuts from the original coins in various public and private collections, cloth, 5s**

"The New Testament has, it appears, in the compass of the Gospel and Acts, no less than 22 allusions to the coinage of Greece, Rome, and Judea; and these beautifully engraved, and learnedly described, give Mr. Akerman an opportunity of serving the good cause of truth in the way of his peculiar avocation."—*Church of England Journal*.

**English Surnames. An Essay on Family Nomenclature, Historical, Etymological, and Humourous; with several illustrative Appendices, by MARK ANTONY LOWER, M.A., 2 vols. post 8vo. THIRD EDITION, ENLARGED, woodcuts, cloth, 12s**

This new and much improved Edition, besides a great enlargement of the Chapters contained in the previous editions, comprises several that are entirely new, together with Notes on Scottish, Irish, and Norman Surnames. The "Additional Proofs," besides the articles on Robuses, Allusive Arma, and the Roll of Battle Abbey, contain dissertations on Inn signs, and Remarks on Christian Names: with a copious Index of many thousand Names. These features render "English Surnames" rather a new work than a new edition.

## Remains of Pagan Saxondom, principally from

Tumuli in England. Drawn from the Originals. Described and illustrated by J. Y. AKERMAN, Fellow and Secretary of the Society of Antiquaries, 4to. 40 FINE COLOURED PLATES, half morocco, £2. 12s 6d

The plates are admirably executed by Mr. Basire, and coloured under the direction of the Author. It is a work well worthy the notice of the Archaeologist.

## Curiosities of Heraldry, with Illustrations from Old

English Writers, by MARK ANTONY LOWER, M.A., author of "Essays on English Surnames," with illuminated Title-page, and numerous engravings from designs by the author, 8vo. cloth, 14s

"Mr. Lower's work is both curious and instructive, while the manner of its treatment is so inviting and popular, that the subject to which it refers, which many have hitherto had too good reason to consider meagre and unprofitable, assumes, under the hands of the writer, the novelty of fiction with the importance of historical truth." — *Athenaeum*.

## A Grammar of British Heraldry, consisting of "Blazon" and "Marshalling," with an Introduction on the Rise and Progress of Symbols and Ensigns, by the Rev. W. SLOANE EVANS, B.A., 8vo. with 26 plates, comprising upwards of 400 figures, cloth, 5s

One of the best introductions ever published.

## Genealogical and Heraldic History of the Extinct and Dormant Baronetcies of England, Ireland, and Scotland, by J. BURKE, Esq., medium 8vo. SECOND EDITION, 638 closely printed pages, in double columns, with about 1000 arms engraved on wood, fine portrait of JAMES L cloth, 10s (original price, £1. 8s)

This work engaged the attention of the author for several years, comprises nearly a thousand families, many of them amongst the most ancient and eminent in the kingdom, each carried down to its representative or representatives still existing, with elaborate and minute details of the alliances, achievements, and fortunes; generation after generation, from the earliest to the latest period.

## Handbook to the Library of the British Museum, containing a brief History of its Formation, and of the various Collections of which it is composed; Descriptions of the Catalogues in present use; Classed Lists of the Manuscripts, &c.; and a variety of Information indispensables for Literary persons; with some Account of the principal Public Libraries in London, by RICHARD SIMS, of the Department of Manuscripts, Compiler of the "Index to the Herald's Visitations," small 8vo. pp. 438, with map and plan, cloth, 5s

It will be found a very useful work to every literary person or public institution in all parts of the world.

What Mr. Antonio Panizzi, the keeper of the department of printed books, says might be done, Mr. Richard Sims, of the department of manuscripts, says shall be done. His Hand-book to the Library of the British Museum is a very comprehensive and instructive volume. I have the sixtieth edition of "Synopsis of the Contents of the British Museum" before me—I cannot expect to see a sixtieth edition of the *Hand-book*, but it deserves to be placed by the side of the *Synopsis*, and I venture to predict for it a wide circulation.

*Mr. Bolton Corney, in Notes and Queries, No. 212.*

## Wiltshire Tales, illustrative of the Manners, Customs, and Dialect of that and adjoining Counties, by JOHN YONGE AKERMAN, 12mo. cloth, 2s 6d

**Contributions to Literature, Historical, Antiquarian, and Metrical, by MARK ANTONY LOWER, M.A., F.S.A., author of "Essays on English Surnames," "Curiosities of Heraldry," &c., post 8vo. woodcuts, cloth, 7s 6d**

**CONTENTS:**—1. On Local Nomenclature. 2. On the Battle of Hastings, an Historical Essay. 3. The Lord Dacre, his mournful end; a Ballad. 4. Historical and Archaeological Memoir on the Iron Works of the South of England, *with numerous illustrations*. 5. Winchelsea's Deliverance, or the Stout Abbot of Battle; in Three Fyftee. 6. The South Downs, a Sketch; Historical, Anecdotal, and Descriptive. 7. On Yew Trees in Cheshire. 8. A Lyttel Geste of a Greate Eale; a peasant Ballade. 9. A Discourse of Genealogy. 10. An Antiquarian Pilgrimage in Normandy, *with woodcuts*. 11. Miscellanies, &c. &c. &c.

**Retrospective Review (New Series); consisting of Criticisms upon, Analysis of, and Extracts from curious, useful, valuable, and scarce Old Books, 2 vols. 8vo. cloth, 10s 6d**

These two volumes form a good companion to the old series of the *Retrospective*, in 16 vols.; the articles are of the same length and character.

**The Nursery Rhymes of England, collected chiefly from Oral Tradition. Edited by J. O. HALLIWELL. The FIFTH EDITION, enlarged, with many Designs, by W. B. SCOTT, Director of the School of Design, Newcastle-on-Tyne, 12mo. cloth, gilt leaves, 4s 6d**

**Popular Rhymes and Nursery Tales, with Historical Elucidations, by J. O. HALLIWELL, 12mo. cloth, 4s 6d**

This very interesting volume on the traditional Literature of England, is divided into Nursery Antiquities, Fireside Nursery Stories, Game Rhymes, Alphabet Rhymes, Riddle Rhymes, Nature Songs, Proverb Rhymes, Places, and Families, Superstition Rhymes, Custom Rhymes and Nursery Songs; a large number are here printed for the first time. It may be considered a sequel to the preceding article.

**Old Songs and Ballads.—A Little Book of Song and Ballads, gathered from Ancient Music Books, MS. and Printed, by E. F. RIMBAULT, LL.D., F.S.A., &c., elegantly printed in post 8vo. pp. 240, half morocco, 6s**

"Dr. Rimbault has been at some pains to collect the words of the Songs which used to delight the Rustics of former times."—*Atlas*.

**Anecdotes and Characters of Books and Men. Collected from the Conversation of Mr. Pope and other eminent Persons of his Time, by the Rev. JOSEPH SPENCE, with Notes, Life, &c. by S. W. SINGER. The second edition, scap. 8vo. portrait, elegantly printed by Whittingham, cloth, 6s**

"The 'Anecdotes' of kind-hearted Mr. Spence, the friend of Pope, is one of the best books of *one* in the English language."—*Critic*.

**The Table Talk of John Selden. With a Biographical Preface and Notes by S. W. SINGER, scap. 8vo. third edition, portrait, cloth, 5s**

There are few volumes of its size so pregnant with sense, combined with the most profound learning; it is impossible to open it without finding some important fact or discussion, something practically useful and applicable to the business of life. Coleridge says, "There is more weighty bullion sense in this book than I ever found in the number of pages in any uninspired writer."

**Life, Progresses, and Rebellion of James, Duke of Monmouth, &c. to his Capture and Execution, with a full account of the "Bloody Assize," under Judge Jeffries, and copious Biographical Notices, by GEORGE ROBERTS, 2 vols. post 8vo. plates and cuts, cloth, 7*s* 6*d* (original price, £1. 4*s*)**

Two very interesting volumes, particularly so to those connected with the West of England.

**A Dictionary of Old English Plays, existing either in print or in manuscript, from the earliest times to the close of the 17th century, including also Notices of Latin Plays written by English Authors during the same period, with particulars of their Authors, Plots, Characters, &c. by JAMES ORCHARD HALLIWELL, Esq., F.R.S., 8vo. cloth, 12*s***

\* Twenty-five copies have been printed on thick paper, price £1. 1*s*.

**Anecdota Literaria; a Collection of Short Poems in English, Latin, and French, illustrative of the Literature and History of England in the XIIith Century; and more especially of the Condition and Manners of the different Classes of Society, by T. WRIGHT, M.A., F.S.A., &c. 8vo. cloth, only 250 copies printed, 5*s***

**Dictionary of Archaic and Provincial Words, Obsolete Phrases, Proverbs, and Ancient Customs, from the Reign of Edward I, by JAMES ORCHARD HALLIWELL, F.R.S., F.S.A., &c. 2 vols. 8vo. containing upwards of 1000 pages, closely printed in double columns, cloth, a new and cheaper edition, 15*s***

It contains above 50,000 words (embodying all the known scattered glossaries of the English language), forming a complete key for the reader of our old Poets, Dramatists, Theologians, and other authors, whose works abound with allusions, of which explanations are not to be found in ordinary Dictionaries and books of reference. Most of the principal Archaisms are illustrated by examples selected from early inedited MSS. and rare books, and by far the greater portion will be found to be original authorities.

**A Glossary; or, Collection of Words, Phrases, Customs, Proverbs, &c., illustrating the Works of English Authors, particularly Shakespeare and his Contemporaries, by ROBERT NARES, Archdeacon of Stafford, &c., a new Edition, with considerable Additions, both of Words and Examples, by JAMES O. HALLIWELL, F.R.S., and THOMAS WRIGHT, M.A., F.S.A., 2 thick vols. 8vo. cloth, £1. 8*s***

The Glossary of Archdeacon Nares is by far the best and most useful work we possess for explaining and illustrating the obsolete language and the customs and manners of the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries, and it is quite indispensable for the readers of the literature of the Elizabethan period. The additional words and examples are distinguished from those in the original text by a + prefixed to each. The work contains between *five and six thousand* additional examples, the result of original research, not merely supplementary to Nares, but to all other compilations of the kind.

**A Glossary of Northamptonshire Words and Phrases; with examples of their colloquial use, with illustrations, from various Authors; to which are added, the Customs of the County, by Miss A. E. BAKER, 2 vols. post 8vo. cloth, 16*s* (original price, £1. 4*s*)**

"We are under great obligations to the lady, sister to the local historian of Northamptonshire, who has occupied her time in producing this very capital Glossary of Northamptonshire provincialisms."—*Examiner*.

**Poems of Rural Life, in the Dorset Dialect, with a Dissertation and Glossary, by the Rev. W.M. BARNES, B.D., second edition, enlarged and corrected, royal 12mo. cloth, 10s**

**Hwomely Rhymes; a Second Collection of Poems in the Dorset Dialect, by the Rev. W. BARNES, royal 12mo. cloth, 5s 1859**

"The author is a genuine poet, and it is delightful to catch the pure breath of song in verses which assert themselves only as the modest vehicle of rare words and Saxon inflections. We have no intention of setting up the Dorset patois against the more extended provincialism of Scotland, still less of comparing the Dorsetshire poet with the Scotch; yet we feel sure that these poems would have delighted the heart of Burns, that many of them are not unworthy of him, and that (at any rate) his best productions cannot express a more cordial sympathy with external nature, or a more loving interest in human joys and sorrows."—*Literary Gazette*.

**Dialect of South Lancashire; or, Tim Bobbin's Tummus and Meary; revised and corrected, with his Rhymes, and an enlarged Glossary of Words and Phrases, chiefly used by the Rural Population of the Manufacturing Districts of South Lancashire, by SAMUEL BAMPFORD, 12mo. second edition, cloth, 3s 6d**

**Barnes (Rev. W.) Notes on Ancient Britain and the Britons, 8vo. cloth, 3s**

"A little book in exactly inverse proportion to its great merit; its contents might have been amplified into a huge octavo. As it is, it is an invaluable manual; and to any thoughtful individual, disposed to the preparation of a series of lectures on our early history, it would be a difficult task to point out a more suggestive book in the English tongue."—*Manchester Advertiser*.

**Views of Labour and Gold, by the Rev. W. BARNES, B.D., Author of "Poems in the Dorset Dialect," "Notes on Ancient Britain," &c. 12mo. cloth, 3s**

"Mr. Barnes is a reader and a thinker. He has a third and a conspicuous merit—his style is perfectly lucid and simple. If the humblest reader of ordinary intelligence desired to follow out the process by which societies are built up and held together, he has but to betake himself to the study of Mr. Barnes's epitome. The title, 'Views of Labour and Gold,' cannot be said to indicate the scope of the Essays, which open with pictures of primitive life, and pass on, through an agreeable and diversified range of topics, to considerations of the rights, duties, and interests of Labour and Capital, and to the inquiry—what constitutes the utility, wealth, and positive well-being of a Nation? Subjects of this class are rarely handled with so firm a grasp and such light and artistic manipulations." *Athenaeum.*

**Biblia Pauperum, reproduced in facsimile from one of the Copies in the British Museum, with an Historical and Bibliographical Introduction by J. PH. BERJEAU, royal 4to. with 40 plates, half morocco, £2. 2s**

As a specimen of the earliest Woodcuts, and of printed Block-books, destined to supersede the Manuscripts anterior to the valuable Invention of Guttenburg, the "Biblia Pauperum" (executed between 1420 and 1430) is well worthy the attention of the Amateur of the Fine Arts, as well as of the Bibliographer. It is printed uniformly with Mr. S. Leigh Sotheby's "Principia Typographica."

28

3.0212

[Redacted]









3 44 010 042 811

THE BORROWER WILL BE CHARGED  
THE COST OF OVERDUE NOTIFICATION  
IF THIS BOOK IS NOT RETURNED TO  
THE LIBRARY ON OR BEFORE THE LAST  
DATE STAMPED BELOW.

NOV - 5 1977

5863958

BOOK DUE NOV 10 1979  
RECEIVED  
JUL 6 1979

AUG 10 1994  
CANCELLED

